THE NATURAL METHOD OF TEACHING.

The First Book.

Being the

ACCIDENCE IN QUESTIONS and ANSWERS,

Explained, Amended, Abridged, and fitted to the Capacity and Use of the lowest Form:

Leading the Learner

From { Letters to Syllables. / Syllables to Words. / Words to Sentences. 1. Single. 2. Compounded. Where is added an account of the Transposition, and most usual Ellipse of Words in a Sentence.

By perpetual, plain, easie and necessary, { I. *Exemples* to be imitated. / II. *Rules* to direct the imitation. / III. *Exercises* Latin and English to ascertain the imitation by the direction of the Rules.

Into which is inserted

I. A *Vocabulary* of *English* and *Latin* Words under each part of Speech, reduced into tolerable order.

II. *Sententiæ Pueriles* English and Latin, consisting of the same Words put into plain Sentences under every Syntactick Rule.

In præstantibus rebus magna sunt ea, quæ sunt optimis proxima. Cic.

By *SAMUEL HOADLY*, Teacher of a private School in *Hackney*.

London, Printed by *M. F.* and are to be sold be *B. Aylmer* at the three Pidgeons in *Cornhill*, and *A. Swalle* at the Unicorn in S. *Paul*'s Church-yard. 1688.

The Preface.

IT is not the design of this Book to lay aside the Common Grammar, *which, by those that use this, ever has been conscientiously taught, and shall be so, untill* Authority *shall please to* consider its merits: *but rather to make the better way to a speedy and usefull progress in it with understanding and chearfulness, without the tediousness of two or three lines at a Lesson by a paltry Construing-book, and those not understood, nor applied to use. And hereby the first intention of the Accidence is recalled, which was by intelligible English Rules,* &c. *to prepare the Learner for the Latin Grammar, and the* Preface *to it supposes a* multitude of Exemples *to be given, and the Learner both able to turn Latin into English, and English into Latin before he be put into the other; it condemns the* passing haste *that is too usual, and affirming that* the variety of teaching it is, and always will be diverse, *it gives such directions about it as are here followed. And there Authority it self not onely leaves each man to make his best use of the Accidence, but invites him to doe his best to make it gain its end.* It is not amiss *(you reade there)* if one seeing by trial an easier and readier way than the common sort of Teachers do, would say (i. e. *publish*) what he hath proved, and for the commodity allowed; that others not knowing the same might by experience prove the like; *(which is all I desire)* and then by proof reasonably judge the like, not hereby excluding the better way when it is found, but in the mean season *(till that be done)* forbidding the worse. *And therefore taking the* Accidence *for the* ground-work *and keeping to the matter, and words of it as far as could be: that which I have here endeavoured, is to find out the way to make it as usefull, as it is capable of being, by giving light to what was dark, and perspicuity to what was obscure; by omitting what was needless, and deferring what was not yet fit to be taught; by limiting what was boundless, and rectifying what was false; but especially by putting life and vigour into what is otherwise dead, by abundance of plain and easie exemples in both tongues adjusted parallel to each other every where; and by reducing the whole into such order and method, that every thing might be found in its proper place, and every operation done in its proper season, the former making way for the latter, and both interchangeably giving and receiving light and strength, so that no one motion might clash and interfere with another, none anticipate another, nor unseasonably interpose it self. This is that, I say, which was indeavoured; but how far the performance has answered the design must be left to others to judge; yet thus much may with truth be affirmed, that the success upon some years trial has been such, where it has been rightly used, as fully proves that the measures have*

not been altogether miſtaken; for the confirmation of which, I refer my ſelf (which is all that with modeſty I can doe) to the experience of thoſe that have tried it, or to any man's own eyes that will candidly come and ſee: but I appeal from the cenſure of thoſe that judge before they try. To ſuch indeed it will not be credible, that children of ſeven or eight years of age ſhould within the firſt year not onely have in readineſs in their heads, a Vocabulary of almoſt all the Primitive uſual words, and know to which Part they belong, be able to form off all Participles from any Verb, and to decline readily any declinable word in the Number, Caſe, Mood, Tenſe or Perſon called for, but make an infinity of ſhort plain Sentences (even as many as may be made of the words in the Vocabulary) without recurring to a Dictionary, in true plain Latin, and in a ſhort time after run through the Latin Grammar and the plaineſt parts of Corderius with eaſe and delight, yet this we have frequently ſeen; ſo great is the difference between ſetting people to work with and without tools and materials, or between driving them with a whip through thick and thin, over hills and dales, precipices and ſtumbling-blocks in the dark, and leading them by the hand through the pleaſanteſt and moſt ſurprizing proſpects in open day-light.

But I would have it remembred that this Book is but the firſt of four or five deſigned to comprehend the whole of what is needfull for Scholars to prepare them to converſe to the beſt advantage with any good Authours of the three tongues, and to become ſuch themſelves, and pretends onely to lay the foundations and eſtabliſh the ground-work, upon which the other in their order are to ſuperſtruct, and foundations though they ſhould be ſolid, yet are neceſſarily rude. Here is given onely a general ſcheme, and the leading Rules, many particularities, many more obſervables, exceptions, anomalies, &c. are here omitted which will find their place and time hereafter. It was not therefore intended that this ſhould be a full and perfect Grammar, there is need of longer time, more age, and greater underſtanding for that; nor know I any thing more fooliſh than the prepoſterous haſte of filling childrens heads with what they are not yet in capacity to apprehend, retain or apply to preſent uſe. And if there be any thing in this Book that may ſeem better deferred, I would adviſe that the learner be directed to skip it; and indeed there are yet ſome things in it that I wiſh had been reſerved to a farther opportunity. For all that was here intended is,

1. To give ſo many Examples as were judged neceſſary to give light to the Rules, and to direct the practice upon them.

2. To propoſe Rules true, plain and directive, but thoſe onely the main and general ones, which being but few are yet ſuch as that to them all that is to follow hereafter may be referred and reduced without change in the Method. I mean all farther Obſervables, all Irregularities and Exceptions, all Variations, &c. and to add ſuch Explications and Limitations onely as the preſent deſign required.

3. To make the Exerciſes and Imitations ſo eaſie and ſo many, as might certainly introduce an habit of performing every operation aright.

4. To digeſt under every Part of Speech a Vocabulary of the Words belonging to it in ſuch order as might beſt aſſiſt the Judgment in the true meaning of the Word, and the Memory in retaining it. In which Vocabularies care is taken

taken that onely the moſt uſual words ſhould appear, and thoſe moſtly Primitive, *with deſign that from them here firſt learned, might in the next Book be orderly deduced all their* Derivatives *and* Compounds, *by plain and ſure Rules, which will beyond imagination facilitate the knowledge of the whole body of words in the Latin Tongue; as for inſtance, after they have learned here what* doctum, lectum, auditum, *and all the other* Supines *ſignifie, and then have a Rule given, that from the* firſt Supine *by changing* um *into* or *is formed a Noun Subſtantive which ſignifies the* Doer, *as from* doctum *to teach,* doctor *a teacher;* lectum *to reade,* lector *a reader; will not a boy of the meaneſt capacity be able to tell what* auditor, emptor, creator, ſervator, *and all the reſt ſignifie? So if he by this Book know what* ducere, pellere, trahere, vocare, &c. *ſignifies; and then in the next that* ad *when compounded ſignifies to,* pro *forth,* re *back,* &c. *as* adducere *to bring to,* producere *to bring forth,* reducere *to bring back, will he not eaſily proceed to tell at firſt ſight what* adtrahere, protrahere, retrahere; advocare, provocare, revocare; advolare, provolare, revolare; adgredi, progredi, regredi, &c. *ſignifie? and of what they are compounded?*

5. *To cauſe the ſame words to be fetched over again in the Genders, Compariſons, Declenſions, Conjugations and Syntactick Rules to keep them and all their Accidents and Declinations in memory, and ſo fix them that they be in no danger of being loſt.*

6. *To ſettle every thing in its* proper place: *for I can't be of their opinion that think there is no need of an* exact method *in teaching, or that in ſpelling of* and *it's no great matter whether the child be taught to begin with* a *or* n *or* d, *nor am I able to judge any thing more irrational and perplexing, than to ſet people to Doe that firſt, which cannot be done till ſome other thing that is* preſuppoſed *to it be done; as for exemple, to tell the Learner* That the Adjective muſt be made to agree with its Subſtantive in the ſame Caſe, Gender and Number, *and require him to practiſe upon it, while as yet he has no knowledge in what Caſe the* Subſtantive *ought to be put, which the* Adjective *is to comply with,* &c.

7. *To keep every word in its* Natural order, *and the Sentence in its* plain and ſimple dreſs, *and not to* omit *ſo much as* Ego *or* Tu *or* Homo, &c. *nor to* tranſpoſe *any word untill the Learner be capable of knowing* why *and* when *ſuch* Ellipſes *and* Tranſpoſitions *may be made; nor to interpoſe a* double *Sentence till the nature and make of* ſingle *ones be perfectly learned.*

8. *To circumſcribe and define the limits and bounds of the Tongue, and ſhew the Learner his ſtages, and the utmoſt goal, that he may ſee his courſe and its end, and know what words may and what may not be put together; than which nothing is more needfull to be done.*

One thing I have been told of, as going too far out of the common Road, which yet I cannot prevail with my ſelf to alter, and that is the beginning at the Verb Infinite, *and firſt laying down diſtinctly the three* principal endings; viz. *the* Infinite *ſignifying* Imperfectly, *the* Infinite *ſignifying* Perfectly *and the* Supine, *and from thence deducing ſeverally the* Perſons, Tenſes, &c. *ſignifying Imperfectly, and then thoſe ſignifying perfectly,* &c. *for this appears ſo natural, even to them that have not obſerved it, that our Conſtruers Engliſh* Vocito *to call,* nigreo

nigreo *to be black*; *and our Dictionary-makers say,* To love amo, *and to doe* ago, *both which are false: this way so plainly distinguishes the Conjugations, and gives occasion for the distinct declining of the* Imperfect *and* Perfect *Tenses (the confounding of which* Varro *somewhere* de L. L. *I remember, justly blames) and obviates so many mistakes of our Latin-makers, that I could not forbear following the great* Comenius *in it, as judging that nothing was wanting to bring it to prevail over all the other ways, but to shew the benefits of it.*

If any ask how it may be used to the best Advantage, the way that we have found best is this.

1. *To reade to the child so much as we judge fit at a time, and to require him to read it after us with exactness well observing the quantity, accent,* &c. *of every Syllable, and marking it with the Pen where need is, and continue this till it seem no longer needfull.*

2. *To explain it, and by familiar questions make him understand the meaning and use of each part, and without rigour trying his memory, and assisting him by prompting him with the English,* &c.

3. *To put him upon getting all that perfectly by heart which is necessary, but the Imitations are onely to be turned by word of mouth from the one language to the other.*

4. *To bring him quickly to write legibly, that for his daily Exercises in and out of School he may on his foul Book write out Exemples of each Declension and Conjugation, and Comparisons, and then proceed to the Exemples of the Syntax; which when and as they are daily corrected should be copyed fairly into another Book to be kept by them and shewn to their friends for their satisfaction, for the Master's credit, and the Boys encouragement.*

To conclude, I take the Reason and End of a School to be great and sublime, it is no less than the regular management of Youth by Power, Wisedom *and* Goodness, *under good discipline, and the instructing, exercising and habituating them to all that they are to know, will or doe while in that state, and to all that may be of use to them in their future life, so that they may come out of the School, prepared for all that Duty they have to doe towards* God, men or themselves.

And it is a very great trust that is reposed in Masters, and there is need of a great many good qualifications in one that undertakes a charge upon which so much depends; and no skill, care or pains can be too much in him who is bound by all obligations,

I. *To keep the glorious* End *always in his own and his charges eye.*

II. *To search out diligently, and use resolutely, the sure* Means *that will infallibly lead to, and gain the* End.

III. *To study and apply the readyest, plainest and easyest* Ways *and* Methods *of so using these means, that the designed* End *may certainly be attained by all that refuse not to follow them.*

This is the sum of our work, and this I think we should look upon as our common interest and concern to advance, that while other Arts and Sciences are daily improving and gaining greater perfection, ours onely lie not in its first rudiments.

What

What I have been doing this way has been onely in reſpect to the publick good, *and from a deſire to be ſome way ſerviceable to my Countrey. If any good be done I have my end; and if any like not this Eſſay, they may pleaſe to let it alone, and there's no hurt done. But if any ſhall follow* modern precedents, *and treat them they diſſent from without regard to honeſty, truth or charity, I ſhall ſee it worth my while before I trouble my ſelf to anſwer them, and till then ſhall take no notice of them, but when I meet with them in my* Litany.

From *Brook houſe* in *Hackney, March* 5. 168$\frac{7}{8}$.

S. H.

Imprimatur,

Rob. Midgely.

THE

THE ACCIDENCE, OR AN INTRODUCTION INTO THE Latin Tongue.

CHAPTER I.

Concerning the Latin Letters.

Queſtion. HOW *many are the Letters uſed in the Latin Tongue?*
1. *Anſwer.* The Latin Letters are two and twenty.
Q. What ought you to know about theſe two and twenty Letters?

2. *A.* Concerning all these Letters I ought to know these three things,

I. Their written Characters or Marks.		II. Their Names.		III. Their true, right and proper Sound.
Great	Small	True	False	N. B. 1. *The proper Sound of every Letter is in all places one and the same, and that may be seen in the true Name of each; but will best be learned by the Master's pronouncing each Letter rightly, and requiring his Scholars to sound it after him; of which farther directions shall be given in the Chapter of Syllables, which the Teacher may follow or neglect, as he likes the old, true, rational, Roman, or our new, false, confounding and barbarous pronunciation, and as he would or would not avoid the trouble of a thousand mistakes in reading, spelling, writing and understanding either the meaning, or the derivation, or the composition of Words.*
A	a	A broad	A slender	
B	b	Be		
C	c	Ce *as* Ke	See	
D	d	De		
E	e	E		
F	f	eF		
G	g	Ge *as* Γη	dzvee	
H	h	He	aitsh	
I J	i j	I *as* ee	eye	
L	l	eL		
M	m	eM		
N	n	eN		
O	o	O		
P	p	Pe		
Q	q	Cu		
R	r	eR		
S	ſ s	cS		
T	t	Te		
U V	u v	U *as* oo	yu *or* you	
X	x	cCS		2. *X is not a single Letter, but a written mark for* 2 (cs) *as* dixi *for*
Y	y	Y *as* υ ψλον	wie	
Z	z	DSe	izzard zed	3. *Z was written for* ds. (dict

Q. *How are these twenty two Letters divided?*

3. *A.* These six Letters a, e, i, o, u, y, are *Vowels*; the other sixteen Letters are *Consonants*.

Q. *Are the six Vowels always pronounced with the same length?*

4. *A.* The six Vowels are sometimes pronounced short, and sometimes long.

so *a* in { *mad* is short / *made* is long } *e* in { *met* is short / *mete* is long } *i* in { *fin* is short / *fiend* is long }

so *o* in { *rob* is short / *robe* is long } *u* in { *cur* is short / *cure* is long } *y* in { *hypocrite* is short / *style* is long.

Q. *How may a Learner know when they are short, and when long?*

5. *A.* In this Book, where it is needfull,

The short Vowel shall be marked thus (˘) as ŏs, vĭr, pĕr;

The long Vowel shall be marked thus (¯) as ōs, vēr, pār.

Q. *Is there then such care to be taken about the length of the Vowels?*

6 *A.* Yes, a most exact care is to be taken,

7. That wherever a Vowel is short, it be still pronounced short, as mil- ĕque

ĕquĕs, ĕs, ĕſt, *&c.* which you muſt not pronounce milēs, ēquēs, ēs, ēſt.

2. That wherever a Vowel is long it be pronounced long, as ēs, mūs, mōs, honōs, jūs, amās, *&c.* which we muſt not pronounce ŏs, mŭs, mŏs, honŏs, jŭs, amăs.

Q. *Now try how you can pronounce the Vowels in theſe,* dŏcēs, ămārĕt, pătĕrĕ, pătērĕ, părĕrĕ, părērĕ, sūs, virtūs, cŭcŭlŭs, vēsică, umbĭlĭcŭs, vēlōx, præcŏx, fēlix, fĭlĭx, făx, audāx, nĕx, rēx.

CHAP. II.

Of Syllables.

Q. *WHat is to be done with theſe Letters?*

7. *A.* The uſe of the Letters is to make Syllables.

Q. *How many Letters go to make a Syllable?*

8. *A.* I. Sometimes *one* Letter makes a Syllable, as a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. Sometimes *two* Letters go to the making of a Syllable, as

ab	eb	ib	ob	ub	yb
ac	ec	ic	oc	uc	yc
ad	ed	id	od	ud	yd
æ		œ			in which the Latins pronounced both the Letters, but we pronounce onely the *e* in both, ſaying for *muſæ muſe*, and for *pœna pena.*
af	ef	if	of	uf	yf
ag	eg	ig	og	ug	yg
ah	eh	ih	oh	uh	yh
ai	ei		oi		yi pronounced right
as ay	ey		oy in Engliſh.		
al	el	il	ol	ul	yl
am	em	im	om	um	ym
an	en	in	on	un	yn
ap	ep	ip	op	up	yp
ar	er	ir	or	ur	yr
as	es	is	os	us	ys of which we found cs oft as ēz vitiouſly, for rēs, ſpēs, docēs, ſaying rēz, ſpēz, docēz.
at	et	it	ot	ut	yt
au	eu		ou		ſounded right
as aw	ew		ow		

ba	be	bi	bo	bu	by
ca	ce	ci	co	cu	cy which the Latins pronounced ever as ka ke ki ko ku ky but we for ke, ki and

ky do barbarouſly pronounce ſe, ſi, ſy; and when before another Vowel, ſie, ſhi, ſhy, as for doceo, facio, Scion, we ſay doſheo, faſhio, Syſhion, whereas they ſaid dokeo, fakio, Sikyon.

		da	de	di	do	du	dy	
				ei		eu		pronounced right
	as			ey		ew		
		fa	fe	fi	fo	fu	fy	
		ga	ge	gi	go	gu	gy	which the Latins pro-

nounced as the Greeks γα γε γι γω γυ γυ but we inſtead of γυ γι γο pronounce dzye dzyi dzyy moſt barbarouſly.

		ha	he	hi	ho	hu	hy	
		ja	je	ji	jo	ju	jy	which they pronoun-

ced right as we do ya ye yi yo yu yy in Engliſh; but we as dzya dzye dzyi dzyo dzyu dzyy againſt all reaſon, confounding j and g, and in both bringing in a moſt barbarous ſound.

		la	le	li	lo	lu	ly	
		ma	me	mi	mo	mu	my	
		na	ne	ni	no	nu	ny	
		pa	pe	pi	po	pu	py	
		ra	re	ri	ro	ru	ry	
		ſa	ſe	ſi	ſo	ſu	ſy	this ſ we too often

pronounce as z, mizer, mizeria, Cæzar, *&c.* for miſer, miſeria, Cæſar.

		ta	te	ti	to	tu	ty	*N. B.* The Latins pro-

nounced ti before a Vowel, but we for ti ſay ſhi, as graſhia, lecſhio, oraſhio, for gratia, lectio, oratio.

		ua	ue	ui	uo	uu	uy	theſe they pronoun-
ced as———		wa	we	wi	wo	wu	wy	and ſo do we after
q, g and ſ, as qui, linquo, lingua, langueo, ſuadeo, ſueſco; but elſewhere								
we pronounce,		va	ve	vi	vo	vu	vy	barbarouſly.

III. Sometimes *three* Letters go to make a Syllable, as

bab	beb	bib	bob	bud	byb	dad	ded	did	dod	dud	dyd
car	cer	cir	cor	cur	cyr	ras	res	ris	ros	rus	rys
qua	que	qui	quo	quu	quy	pra	pre	pri	pro	pru	pry

		ax	ex	ix	ox	ux	yx	which are the ſame
	with	acs	ecs	ics	ocs	ucs	ycs	
		xa	xe	xi	xo	xu	xy	which are to be pro-
	nounced as	cſa	cſe	cſi	cſo	cſu	cſy	
		pha	phe	phi	pho	phu	phy	which we pronounce
	as	fa	fe	fi	fo	fu	fy	
		aph	eph	iph	oph	uph	yph	which we ſound----
	as	af	ef	if	of	uf	yf	but they pronounced

the *p* with the Lips ſhut, and an *aſpiration* added.

		cha	che	chi	cho	chu	chy	theſe they pronoun-
	ced as	kha	khe	khi	kho	khu	khy	not as we do
	as	tſha	tſhe	tſhi	tſho	tſhu	tſhy	

IV. Some

IV. Some Syllables are made of *four* Letters, as *part, pain, ſtar, font, quil, ſoul, ſoul, reſt, waſt, hart,* &c.

V. Some Syllables conſiſt of *five* Letters, as *mount, ſtain, bring, ſtand, ſtrip, ſtart, quart, print.*

VI. Sometimes there are *ſix* Letters in one Syllable, as *ſtript, ſtrong, ſought, ſought, caught, fright, bright,* &c.

Q. *Now tell me how many Letters are in each of theſe Syllables:* All Men love and praiſe the Child that minds his Book, and loves to learn.

N. B. *All that is here ſaid about the right pronunciation of the Latin Letters ſhall elſewhere be proved beyond rational contradiction.*

CHAP. III.

Concerning Words.

Q. *WHat is to be done with the Syllables?*

9. *A.* The uſe of Syllables is to make Words.

Q. *How many Syllables go to make a Word?*

10. *A.* I. Sometimes *one* Syllable makes a Word, as *man, hat, can, ſtand, death, wiſe, fool, calf, horſe, aſs.*

II. Sometimes *two* Syllables go to make a Word, as *wo-man, fa-ther, mo-ther, maſ-ter, ſo-ber, wiſ-dom, plen-ty.*

III. Sometimes *three* Syllables are in one Word, as *gra-ci-ous, god-li-neſs, pi-e-ty, ſo-ber-neſs, un-wor-thy.*

IV. Some Words are made of *four* Syllables, as *ſo-bri-e-ty, cor-rec-ti-on, peace-a-ble-neſs, cha-ri-ta-ble, un-mer-ci-full.*

V. Some Words conſiſt of *five* Syllables, as *ex-com-mu-ni-cate, par-ti-cu-lar-ly, ma-giſ-te-ri-al.*

VI. Sometimes *ſix* Syllables go to make a Word, as *pu-ri-fi-ca-ti-on, ſanc-ti-fi-ca-ti-on, juſ-ti-fi-ca-ti-on,* &c.

Q. *In each of theſe Words following tell me how many Syllables are there:* Good Children will perpetually hearken to the inſtructions of their Parents, and will be obedient to the commands of their Maſters.

CHAP. IV.

Of the EIGHT PARTS *of Speech; or, of the eight ſorts of Words which Men uſe in ſpeaking.*

Q. *WHat are Words uſed for?*

11. *A.* Men uſe Words to expreſs and declare the thoughts of their mind, when they ſpeak: for we often need to ſignifie our thoughts to others, and they cannot know our thoughts but by our *Speech.*

Q. *What then is our Speech made up of?*

12. *A.* When we ſpeak to expreſs our thoughts, our Speech is made up of Words, and therefore Words are called *Parts of Speech.*

Q. *In our Speech how many Parts are there?*

13. *A. In Speech* be theſe eight Parts following.

1. *A Noun.*
2. *A Pronoun.*
3. *A Verb.*
4. *A Participle.*
5. *An Adverb.*
6. *A Conjunction.*
7. *A Preposition.*
8. *An Interjection.*

Q. *What mean you when you ſay there are* eight Parts of Speech?

14. *A.* I mean that there are *eight ſorts of Words*, which Men uſe when they ſpeak; for ſome Words are *Nouns*, ſome are *Pronouns*, ſome are *Verbs*, other are *Participles*, other are *Adverbs*, other Words are *Conjunctions*, other *Prepoſitions*, and other are *Interjections.*

Q. *Are there no more ſorts of Words uſed in ſpeaking?*

15. *A.* There are no other kind of Words uſed; for every Word which Men uſe in ſpeaking is either a *Noun*, or a *Pronoun*, or a *Verb*, or a *Participle*, or an *Adverb*, or a *Conjunction*, or a *Prepoſition*, or elſe an *Interjection.*

Q. *Do you not deſire to know which Words are* Nouns, *and which are* Pronouns, *and which* Verbs, &c.

A. Yes, Sir, I would gladly know, if you pleaſe to teach me.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of a Noun.

Q. *What is a* Noun?

16. *A.* A *Noun* is the Name of a thing that may be ſeen, felt, heard or underſtood, as

The Name of this thing which here you ſee, in Engliſh is	*An Hand* / *An Houſe* / *A Man*	And in the Latin Tongue the Name of it is	Mănŭs. / Dŏmŭs. / Hŏmŏ.

So this	*Man* / *Boy* / *Paper*	is called in Engliſh	*Good* / *Bad* / *Light*	And in Latin. Bŏnŭs. / Mălŭs. / Lĕvĭs.

Q. *What Words then are* Nouns?

17. *A.* All thoſe Words are *Nouns* that are the Names of things.

Q. *How many kinds of* Nouns *are there?*

18. *A.* There are two ſorts of *Nouns*; for of *Nouns* ſome be *Subſtantives*, and ſome be *Adjectives*.

Q. *What is a* Noun Subſtantive?

19. *A.* A *Noun Subſtantive* is that Name of a thing, that can ſtand by it ſelf in a ſaying, and requireth not an *Adjective* to be joined to it to make ſenſe, as *a Man* Homo, *a Maſter* Magiſter, *a Parent* Parens.

Q. *How can you make it appear that theſe are* Subſtantives?

20. *A.* Becauſe if one ſay, *I ſee a Man*, or *I ſee the Maſter*, or *I ſee a Parent*; in each ſaying the ſenſe is plain and full, and I underſtand its meaning without an *Adjective* added to it.

Q. *What is a* Noun Adjective?

21. *A.* A *Noun Adjective* is that Name of a thing that cannot ſtand by it ſelf in a ſaying, but requireth a *Subſtantive* to which it may be joined to make ſenſe; as *good* bonus, *happy* felix, *white* albus.

Q. *Make it clear that theſe and ſuch like Words cannot ſtand alone in a ſaying?*

22. *A.* If any one ſay, *I ſee a good*, or *I ſee an happy*, or *I ſee a white*; in theſe ſayings there is no good ſenſe, nor do we underſtand the meaning of them, but there needs to be put in a *Subſtantive* to each *Adjective* to make ſenſe, as *I ſee a good Boy*, *I ſee an happy Man*, *I ſee a white Horſe*.

Q. *In theſe ſayings following tell me which* Nouns *are* Subſtantives, *and which are Adjectives*, and the reaſon why.

The Maſter ſent a *Letter*.	The Ape eats *Apples*.	That is a *mad*.
The Boy writes a *good*.	The Man builds an *Houſe*.	This is a *ſober*.
A wiſe learns his *Book*.	We love *ſweet*.	Horſes drink *Water*.

§ 1. A VOCABULARY:

Or, Exemples of Nouns Substantive, *mostly Primitive.*

N. B. Here follow the English and Latin Names of things most familiar to Children.

23. Every

Thing	Rēs	5
hath its *name*	nōmĕn	
or *sign*	signŭm.	

24. A Thing is

God	Dĕŭs	2
the world	mundŭs	2
or *a part* of it	pars	

25. Besides which there is

nothing	nĭhĭlum	

26. A part is

a member	membrum	
a piece	frustum	
a bit or *crumb*	mīca	

27. Things in the World are,

a spirit	spīrĭtŭs	4
a body	corpŭs	3
a moving live-creature	ănĭmăl	

28. All which things have their

cause	causa	
nature	nātūra	
lot or *state*	fors	
and *end*	fīnĭs	

29. For nought came by

chance	fors	
or *fortune*	fortūna	

30. The nature of things is in their

matter	māterĭa	
form	forma	
mode	mŏdŭs	2
and *kind*	gĕnŭs	3

31. To all things belong

time	tempŭs	3
place	lŏcus	2
order	ordo	
and *number*	nūmĕrŭs	2

32. Time is

an hour	hōra	
a day	dĭēs	5
a month	mensĭs	
a year	annŭs	2
an age	sēcŭlum	
	or ævum	

33. In a day is

the dawn	aurōra	
the morning	māne	
the evening	vespĕr	3
the night	nox	

34. The day after this is

to morrow	crās	

35. In a Year are

the spring	vēr	
the summer	æstās	
autumn	autúmnŭs	3
the winter	brūma	
	or hĭems	

35. To

36. To a **place** belong

a ſpace	ſpătĭum	
a bound	tĕrmĭnus	2
a border	līmĕs	3
a coaſt	ōra	

Of Spirits.

36. A **Spirit** is

an angel	ángĕlŭs	2
a mind	mens	
	or ănĭmŭs	
a ſoul	ănĭma	

37. A wicked **Angel** is

Satan	Sātānās	1
a devil	diábŏlŭs	2
or fiend	dæmōn	

Of Bodies.

38. The greater **Bodies** are

Heaven	Cœlŭm	
the ſkie	æthĕr	3
the air	āĕr	3
the earth	tĕllūs	3
the water	ăqua	

39. Bodies in the **Skie** are

the ſun	sōl	
the moon	lūna	
a ſtar	ſtella	

40. A **company of Stars** is

a conſtellation	sīdŭs	3

41. From which come

a beam	jūbăr	
light	lūx	
heat	călŏr	
ſultry heat	æſtŭs	4

42. When **light** is withheld there is

a ſhadow	umbra	
a dusk	călīgo	
darkneſs	tĕnĕbræ	

43. When **heat** is gone there is

cold	frīgus	3
froſt	gĕlu	
hoar froſt	prüīna	

44. **Heat** inkindled in fuel is

a fire	ignis	
a ſpark	ſcintilla	
a flame	flamma	
lightening	fulgŭr	

45. By **Fire** are made

a fire-brand	torris	
a live-coal	prūna	
a dead-coal	carbo	
aſhes	cīnĭs	
	or cīnĕr	3

46. In the **Air** is

a ſteam	vapŏr	
a wind	ventŭs	2
a rain-bow	īrĭs	
a thunderbolt	fulmĕn	

47. A **Vapour** is

a ſmoak	fūmus	2
a miſt	nĕbŭla	
a cloud	nūbēs	

48. A gentle **Wind** is

a gale	aura	

Of Water.

49. **Water** is

a drop	ſtilla	
	or gutta	

a dew

a dew	rōs	
a ſpring	fons	

50. A running water is

a river	rīvus	2
	or amnis	
a ſea	mărе	
the ocean	ōcĕănus	2

51. Standing water is

a moor or fen	pălūs	3
a pool	ſtagnum	
a lake	lācus	4

52. Frozen water is

ice	glăcĭēs	
ſnow	nix	
hail	grando	

53. In Waters are

a wave	unda	
a whirlpool	gurgĕs	
a ford	vădum	

54. Of water is made

a bubble	bulla	
a foam	ſpūma	
a ſhower	imbĕr	3
a juice	ſuccūs	2

Of Earth.

55. Earth is

land	terra	
ground	hūmūs	2
firm-ground	ſōlum	
	or fundūs	2

56. Pieces of earth are

duſt	pulvĭs	
	or pulvĕr	3
a clod	glēba	
chalk	crēta	

57. Earth mixt with water is

dirt	cœnum	
mud	līmus	
clay	lūtum	

58. Land by the water ſide is

a brink	margo	
a bank	rīpa	
a ſhore	lītus	3

59 In the Earth is

a rift or cleft	rīma	
a den	ſpĕcus	
a cave	antrum	

60. Upon the Earth is

a plain field	campus	
a vale or vally	vallis	
a hill	collis	
a mountain	mons	

61. Bodies growing of the Earth are

a mineral	mĭnĕra	
a plant	planta	

Of Minerals.

62. A Mineral is

ſalt	săl	
alum	alūmĕn	
brimſtone	ſulfŭr	
a metal	mĕtăllum	
a ſtone	lăpis	

63. Metals are

lead	plumbum	
iron	ferrum	
copper	æs	
tin	ſtannum	
ſilver	argéntum	
gold	aurum	

64. A Stone is

ſand	ărēna	
a pibble	ſcrūpus	2
a big-ſtone	ſaxum	

65. Stones more regarded are

a whetſtone	cōs	
a flint	sīlĕx	
a pumice	pūmĕx	
a marble	marmŏr	
a cryſtal	cryſtállus	2
a jewel	gemma	

66. A Jewel is

a diamant	ădămas	
a ſapphire	ſapphīrus	2
a ruby	rubīnus	2

Of Plants.

67. A Plant is

an herb	herba	
a ſhrub	frŭtex	
a tree	arbŏr	

68. An Herb is

graſs	grāmĕn	
poppy	păpāvĕr	
flax	līnum	
a pot-herb	ŏlus	3
corn	frūx	

69. A Pot-herb is

lettuce	lactūca	
cumin	cumīnum	
aniſe	anīſum	
ſage	ſālvĭa	
mint	mentha	
thyme	thymum	

70. Bread-corn far

is a bean	fāba	
a pea	pīſum	
oat	ăvĕna	
barly	hordĕum	
rie	sĕcāle	
wheat	ădŏr	

71. Of Corn

a ſtanding crop is	sĕgĕs	

72. In Corn is

the ſtalk	caulis	
the ear	ſpīca	
the grain	grānum	

Of Shrubs.

73. A Shrub is

a cane	canna	
a reed	călămus *or* ărúndo	2
a roſe-buſh	rŏſa	
a vine	vītis	
ivy	hĕdĕra	
an hazel	cŏrylus	2

Of Trees.

74. A Tree is

an apple-tree	mālus	2
a pear-tree	pyrus	2
a cherry-tree	cĕrăſus	2
a fig-tree	fĭcus	4
a bay-tree	laurus	2
a box-tree	buxus	2
a cedar	cēdrus	2
an oak	quercus	4
a willow	sălix	

75. Trees growing together make

a buſh	dūmus	2
a wood	ſilva	
a foreſt	nĕmus	3
a grove	lūcus	2

76. The parts of Plants are

the root	rādix	
the ſtump	ſtirps	
the ſtock	truncus	2
the branch or bough	rāmus	2

77. In which are

the rind	cortex	
the bark	liber	2
the wood	lignum	

78. In a Bough are

a freſh leaf	frons	
a dead leaf	fŏlium	
a bloſſom or flower	flōs	
the fruit	fructus	4

Of Fruits.

79. Fruit is

a cucumber	cūcūmer	3
a melon	melo	
a pome	pōmum	
a nut	nūx	
a berry	bacca	

80. A Pome is

an apple	mālum	
a pear	pyrum	
a cherry	cĕrăſum	
a plum	prūnum	
a fig	ficus	4

81. A Nut is

a chaſtnut	caſtănĕa	
an acorn	glans	
a walnut	jūglans	

82. A Berry is

an olive	ŏliva	
a ſtray-berry	frāgum	
a grape	ūva	

83. Plants ariſe from

ſeed	sēmen	

Of live-Creatures.

84. An Animal is

an inſect	inſectum	
a worm	vermis	
a ſerpent	ſerpens	
a fiſh	piſcis	
a bird	āvis	
a beaſt	bĕſtĭa	
a man	hŏmo	

85. In all which there is

life	vīta	
ſenſe	ſenſus	
ſex	ſexus	

86. Things perceived by ſenſe are

colour	cŏlŏr	
ſound	ſŏnŭs	
taſt or *reliſh*	săpŏr	
ſmell	ŏdŏr	
pain or *grief*	dŏlŏr	

87. A Sound is

a grumble	murmŭr	
an hiſs	ſĭbĭlus	
a voice	vōx	

88. By its Sex an animal

a male	mās	
or *a female*	fēmĭna	

89. A Female brings forth

a young one	pullus	
or elſe *an egg*	ōvum	

of

Of Insects.

90. An Insect is

a louſe	pĕdĭcŭlus	2
a flea	pūlex	
an ant or amet	formīca	
a ſpider	arāněa	

91. Winged insects are

a flie	muſca	
a bee	ăpis	
a waſp	veſpa	
a locuſt	lŏcŭſta	

Of Worms.

92. A Worm is

a ground-worm	lumbrīcus	2
a leech	hirūdo	
a ſnail	līmāx	

Of Serpents.

93. A Serpent is

a ſnake	anguis	
a dragon	draco	
a viper or adder	vīpĕra	

94. In which is

poiſon or venome	vĕnēnum	

Of Fiſhes.

95. River-fiſhes are

a tench	tinca	
a perch	perca	
a trout	trutta	
a ſalmon	ſalmo	

96. Sea-fiſhes are

a whale	balæna	
a dolphin	delphin	
an herring	hālec	
a ſole	sŏlea	

97. Shel-fiſhes are

an oiſter	óſtrĕa	
a crab	cancer	2
a cockle	cóchlĕa	

98. In ſome Fiſhes are

a ſcale	ſquāma	
a fin	pinna	
a gill	bránchĭa	

Of Birds or Fowls.

99. Birds about the houſe are

a ſparrow	paſſĕr	3
a ſwallow	hĭrúndo	
a pigeon	cŏlŭmbus	2

100. Field-birds are

a lark	ălăuda	
a partridge	perdīx	
a raven	corvus	2

101. Birds of the Wood are

a pheſan	phāſiānus	2
a blackbird	mĕrŭla	
a turtle	turtŭr	

102. Birds of prey are

an eagle	ăquīla	
an hawk	accĭpĭter	3
a kite	milvus	2

103. A night-bird is

an owl	būbo	
an howlet	ŭlŭla	
a nightingale	luſcĭnĭa	

104. Tame-fowls are

a cock	gallus	2
a hen	gallīna	
a capon	căpo	

105. Water-

105. **Water-fowls** are

a goose	anſer	3
a duck	ănăs	
a ſwan	ŏlŏr	

106. **To Birds** belong

a feather	plūma
a quil	penna
a wing	āla
a creſt or *comb*	criſta

Of Beaſts.

107. **Beaſts** about the **houſe** are

a dog	cănis	
a cat	fēlis	
a mouſe	mūs	3

108. **Cattel** Pecús 3

is *a bull*	taurus	2
a cow	vacca	
a calf	vĭtŭlus	2
a ſheep	ŏvĭs	
a ram	ărĭēs	3
a lamb	agnŭs	2
a ſwine	sūs	3
an hog	porcŭs	2
a pig	néfrens	
a goat	căpĕr	2
a ſhee-goat	căpra	
a kid	hœdus	2

109. A **company** of theſe is

a flock	grĕx

110. **Working** cattel are

a bullock	bōs	
an horſe	ĕquus	2
an aſs	ăsĭnus	2
a mule	mūlus	
a camel	cămēlus	2
an elephant	ĕlĕphas	

111. **Wild-beaſts** are

a ſtag	cervus	
a buck or doe	dāma	
an hare	lĕpŭs	
an ape	sīmĭa	
a mole	talpa	
a frog	rāna	

112. **Ravenous** beaſts ar

a lion	lĕo
a bear	urſus
a wolf	lŭpus
a fox	vulpes

113. **Beaſts** have

ſome *an horn*	cornu
ſome *a ſnout*	roſtrum
ſome *a tail*	cauda
	or pēnis

114. **On Beaſts** is either

hair or ſhag	pĭlus
or *wool*	lāna
or *briſtle*	sēta

115. **Hair** is

a mane	jūba
a lock	cōma
a beard	barba

The Parts of the Body, eſpecially of Mans.

116. The **Parts** of the **Body** are

the head	căpŭt
the trunk	truncus
a limb	artus

117. In the **Head** are

the crown	vertex
the hair	crīnis
	or căpillus
the ear	auris

the face	făcĭes	5

118. In the **Face** are

the countenance	vultŭs	4
the forehead	frons	
the eye	ŏcŭlus	2
the nose	nāsus	2
the mouth	ōs	
the chin	mentum	

119. In the **Eye** is

a tear	lăcrĭma	

120. To the **Mouth** belong

the lip	lăbĭum *or* lăbrum	
the outer cheek	gĕna	

121. Within the **Mouth** are

the roof	pălātum	
the inner cheek	bucca	
the tongue	lingua	
the gum	gingīva	
the chap	faux	
the throat	guttŭr	

122. **Between** the head and Trunk are

the neck	collum	
the throttle	jŭgŭlum	
the crag	cervīx	

123. In the **Trunk** of the body are

the fore-part		
the back-part	tergum	
the side	latus	3

124. In the **fore-part** are

the breast	pectus	3
the belly	venter	3
or womb	ŭtĕrus	2
the groin	inguĕn	

125. In the **Breast** are

the dug	mamma	
or *breast*	ūber	3
the teat or *nipple*	păpilla	

126. In the **back-part** are

the shoulder	hŭmĕrus	2
the mid-back	dorsum	
the buttock	nātis	

127. The **Limbs** are

the hand	mănus	4
and *the foot*	pēs	

128. Parts of the **Hand** are

the arm	brāchĭum	
the elbow	cŭbĭtus	2
the fist	pugnus	2
the palm	palma	
the thumb	pollex	
a finger	dĭgĭtus	2

129. Parts of the **Foot** are

the thigh	fĕmŭr	
thee knee	gĕnū	
the ham	pŏplĕs	
the leg	crūs	3
the calf	sūra	
the ancle	tālus	2
the heel	calx	

130. **In** all which parts are

skin	cūtis	
or *hide*	pellis	
flesh	cărо	
a bone	ŏs	
humour	hūmŏr	

131. The **fleshy parts** are

a muscle	mūscŭlus	2
an inward	viscŭs	3
a pipe	cānālis	

132. The **Inwards** are

the brain	cĕrĕbrum	
the heart	cŏr	
the lungs or *lights*	pulmo	
the liver	jĕcŭt	
the spleen	splēn	

or *milt*

or *milt*	lĭēn	
the paunch	alvus	2
the entrails	exta	
the rein or *kidny*	rēn	
the bladder	vēsĭca	

133. The Pipes are

the gules	gŭla	
a gut	lactis	
a vein	vēna	

The Bones.

134. Bones of the Head are

the skull	crānĭum	
the cheek-bone	māla	
a tooth	dens	

135. Bones of the Trunk are

the breaſt-bone	ſternum	
the back-bone	ſpīna	
a rib	coſta	

136. Bones of the Limbs are

the eln or *ell*	ulna	
the ſhin-bone	tĭbĭa	
a nail or *claw*	unguis	

The Humours.

137. Humours in the Body are

blood	ſanguis	
milk	lāc	
gall	fēl	

138. Humours caſt forth are

ſweat	sūdŏr	
phlegm	pitŭīta	
ſpittle	sălīva	
ſnot	mūcus	2
matter	pūs	3
piſs	ūrīna	

139. Groſſer matter caſt forth is

dung	ſtercus	3
a ſirreverence	merda	

Of the Affections and Diſeaſes.

140. Animals are affected with

deſire	desīdĕrĭum	
hunger	fāmes	
thirſt	sĭtis	
love	ămŏr	
hatred	ŏdĭum	
anger	īra	
joy	gaŭdĭum	
ſorrow	mœrŏr	
hope	ſpēs	5
fear	tĭmŏr	
or *dread*	mĕtŭs	4
	or formīdo	

141. And they are ſubject to

a wound	vulnus	3
an ulcer or *ſore*	ulcus	3
a diſeaſe	morbus	2
death	mors	

142. Diſeaſes are

a cough	tuſſis	
an ague or *fever*	febris	
the dropſie	hydrōps	
conſumption	tābes	3

143. Catching diſeaſes are

the itch or *ſcab*	ſcābĭes	5
the leproſie	lĕpra	
the plague	peſtis	

144. While

144. While they are **free** from these, they are in

health, welfare	sălūs	3
strength	rōbŭr	

145. For their **maintenance** there is

provision or *plenty*	cōpĭa	
food or *meat*	cĭbūs	2
drink	pōtŭs	4

Of Man, his age and kindred.

146. **Man** by his **age** is

a *babe*	pūpus	2
a *boy* or *lad*	pŭĕr	2
a *girl* or *lass*	puella	
a *grown man*	vĭr	2
a *grown woman*	mŭlĭer	3
an *old woman*	ănŭs	4

147. A man by his **kindred** is

a *father*	pătĕr	3
a *mother*	mātĕr	3
a *son*	fīlĭus	
a *daughter*	fīlĭa	
a *brother*	frāter	3
a *sister*	sŏrŏr	
a *grand-father*	ăvŭs	2
a *grand-mother*	ăvĭa	
a *grandchild*	nĕpōs	

148. A man too big is

a *giant*	gĭgas	3

A man too little is

a *dwarf*	pūmĭlĭo	

Proper names.

149. Proper **Names** of men are

Adam	Adāmus	2
Abraham	Abrahāmus	2
Antony	Antōnĭus	2
Benjamin	Benjamīnus	2
Charles	Cārōlus	2
Christopher	Christŏphŏrus	2
Daniel	Dănĭĕl	3
David	Dăvĭd	3
Edward	Eduārdus	2
Francis	Francĭscus	2
George	Geŏrgĭus	2
Henry	Henrĭcus	2
James	Jacōbus	2
John	Joănnes	3
Luke	Lūcas	1
Mark	Marcus	2
Matthew	Matthæus	2
Paul	Paulus	2
Peter	Pĕtrus	2
Richard	Richārdus	2
Robert	Robĕrtus	2
Samuel	Sămŭel	3
Thomas	Thōmas	1
William	Guilielmus	2

150. Proper **Names** of women are

Ann	Anna
Barbara	Bărbăra
Catharine	Cathărīna
Dorothy	Doróthĕa
Elizabeth	Elizabētha
or *Betty*	*or* Elīza
Eve	Eva
Hannah	Hanna
Jane	Jāna
Joan	Joánna
Martha	Mártha
Mary	Maria
Rebecka	Rebécca
Sarah	Sāra
Susan	Susánna

Acts of the Creatures.

151. That these Creatures may **act** they have

a power or *force*	vīs
help or *means*	ŏps
aid	auxĭlĭum

152. The usual **manner** of acting is

custome or *manner*	mōs

And the thing done by them is

a work	ŏpŭs 3

153. The work of a **Bee** is

wax	cēra
an hony comb	fāvus 2
hony	mĕl

154. The work of a **Bird** is

a nest	nĭdus 2

Acts of Men.

155. Every **Man** hath his

business	nĕgōtĭum
charge	mūnus 3
duty or *office*	offĭcĭum

156. Man's **duty** lies in

labour	lăbōr
virtue	vīrtūs 3
faithfulness	fĭdēs 5

157. He **should** doe all with

counsel	consĭlĭum
art or *skill*	ars
care	cūra
study	stŭdĭum
freeness	sponte *Abl.* 3
without *delay*	mŏra

158. That they may doe their work there is **proposed** to them.

a law	lēx
an exemple	exémplum
a reward	præmĭum
a punishment	pœna

159. The **Law** commands to allow to every thing its

right or *due*	jūs
worth or *price*	prĕtium
honour	hŏnŏr

160. **Rewards** are

praise	laus
glory	glōrĭa
gain	lŭcrum
a gift	mūnus
wages	mercēs
hire or *pay*	stĭps

161. **Punishments** are

a fine	mulcta
a stripe	verbĕr
	or plāga
death or *killing*	nĕx

162. For **punishing** there

a prison	carcĕr
a cross or *gallows*	crŭx
hell	orcus

163. In work **ill done** there

a blemish	mendum
a spot or *blot*	măcŭla
a faultiness or *vice*	vĭtĭum

164. A **vicious** act is

a fault	culpa
a crime	crīmĕn
a villany	scĕlŭs
dishonesty	prŏbrŭm

165. A **crime** is

lewdneſs	luxus	4
deceit or *a cheat*	dŏlŭs	2
fraud	fraus	3

166. **Perſons guilty** of crimes are

a thief	fūr	
a cut-throat	lătro	
an adulterer	adúltĕr	2

The Works of Men.

167. For **paſſage** they make

a way	vĭa	
a path	callis	

168. For paſſage over Water

a bridge	pons	
a raft or *float*	rătĭs	
a skiff	ſcăpha	
a boat	cymba	
a ſhip	nāvis	

169. Parts of a **Ship** are

the fore-ſhip or *prow*	prōra	
the hind-ſhip or *poop*	puppis	
the keel	cărīna	

170. For **lighting** they make

a torch	făx	
a lamp	lámpăs	3
a candle	candēla	

171. Of **Earth** they make

a brick	lătĕr	3
a pipkin	olla	
a pitcher	úrcĕus	2

172. Of **Land** they make

a court or *plat*	ārĕa	
a field	ăgĕr	2
a garden	hórtŭs	2

173. **About** which is made

an hedge	sēpēs	3
a mound	vallum	
a wall	mūrus	2

174. Of **Metals** they make

money	nummus *or* pĕcūnĭa	2
a drinking cup	pōcŭlum	
a kettle	lēbēs	3

175. Of **Aſhes** are made

glaſs	vĭtrum	
ſope	sāpo	

176. Of **Graſs** they make

hay	fœnum	
a mat	matta	
a ſpread-mat	flŏrĕa	

177. Of **Grain** is made

flour	fărīna	
fine flour	póllĭs *or* pollĕn	
bran	furfŭr	

178. Of **Flax** is made

a thread	fĭlum	
a line	līnĕa	
linen	lintĕum	

179. Of Flax, **Wool**, or **Hair** is made

a rope	fūnis	
a ſack	ſaccus	
a ſail or *veil*	vēlum	
cloth	pannus	

180. Of **Wood** they make

a ſtaff	ſcīpĭo	
a ladder	ſcāla	
a board	tăbŭla	
a plank	planca	
a rod or *ſhaft*	rādĭus	2

181. Of **Skins** they make

leather	cŏrĭum	
a pouch or *ſcrip*	pēra	
a purſe	crūmēna	

182. For **eating** they make

bread	pānĭs	
butter	būtyrum	
cheeſe	cāsĕus	2
puliſe	puls	
a dainty diſh	dăps	
a banquet or *feaſt*	ĕpŭlum	

183. For **drinking** they make

broth or *pottage*	jūs	3
ale or *beer*	cerevīſia	
wine	vīnum	

184. Eating a **meal** is

a break-faſt	jentācŭlum	
a dinner	prandĭum	
a common ſupper	cœna	

185. For **cloathing** they make

an hat	gălērus	2
a perukе	caliéndrum	
a garment	veſtis	

186. A **garment** is

a cloſe coat	tŭnĭca	
a mantle or *pall*	palla	
a cloak	pállĭum	
a gown	tŏga	

187. A **Goldſmith** makes

a ring	ánnŭlus	2
a chain	torquis	
a neck-lace or *bracelet*	mŏnīle	

188. A **Fowler** makes

a gin or *ſnare*	lāquĕus	2
bait	eĭca	
a coop	cors	

189. The **Packer** makes

a burthen	ŏnŭs	3
a fardle or *pack*	fărcĭna	
a bundle	faſcis	

190. An **handy-crafts-man**

namely *a ſmith*, *a wright*, *a maſon*	făbĕr	2
makes *a carriage*	vĕhă	
arms	arma	*pl.* 2
a veſſel	vās	3
a building	ædes	3
houſhold-ſtuff	sŭpéllex	
an inſtrument	inſtrŭméntum	

Carriages.

191. **Carriages** are

a car or *cart*	carrus	2
a tumbrel	plauſtrum	
a coach or *chariot*	currus	4

192. To **Carriages** belong

a pole	tĕmo	
an axel-tree	axis	
a wheel	rŏta	

193. For **Carriage-beaſts** are

a yoke	jŭgum	
a ſaddle	ſella	
a bridle	frœnum	

Arms.

194. **Arms** are

a weapon	tēlum	
a bow	arcus	
an arrow	săgitta	
a gun	ſclōpus	
a ſword	enſis	
	or glădĭus	

195. To a ſword belong

an edge	ăcĭes	5
a point	mūcro	
a ſcabbard	vāgīna	

196. Armour is

an helmet or *head-piece*	gălĕa	
a mail-coat	lōrĭca	
a greave or *boot*	ŏcrĕa	
a ſhield, buckler or *target*	ſcūtum *or* clypĕus	2

Veſſels.

197. Veſſels are

a hogs-head	dōlĭum	
a barrel	cădus	2
a basket	corbis	

Buildings.

198. Buildings are

a cote or *cotage*	căſa	
an houſe	dŏmŭs	2 & 4
a palace	pălātĭum	

199. Fortified places are

a camp	caſtrum	
a fort or *caſtle*	arx	
a tower	turris	

200. A building raiſed for worſhip is

an altar	altāre *or* āra	
a temple or *church*	templum *or* fānum	

201. In a building is

the wall	părĭes	3
a pilar	cŏlūmna	
a chimny	cămīnus	2

203. Rooms in an houſe are

the cellar	cella	
the kitchin	cŭlīna	
the hall	aula	
the chamber	cămĕra	

204. In the Kitchin are

the cook	cŏquŭs	2
a furnace	fornāx	
victuals	opsōnĭum	

205. To an Houſe belong

a gate	jānŭa	
a door	oſtĭum	
a window	fĕnéſtra	

206. To a Gate belong

a poſt	poſtis	
an hinge	cardo	

207. Out-houſes are

a bath	bălnĕum	
a ſtable	ſtăbŭlum	
a privy	fŏrĭca	
a barn	hórrĕum	
a ſty	hăra	
a mill	mŏla	

208. A company of houſes

a ſtreet or *row*	vīcus	2
a town or *city*	óppĭdum *or* urbs	

209. To a Town belong

a gate or *port*	porta	
walls	mœnĭa *pl.*	
a publick meeting place	fŏrum	

210. Houſe and Land out of Town is

the country	rūs	3
a country farm or *village*	jāgus *or* villa	2

Houſhold-ſtuff.

211. Houſhold-ſtuff is

a ſpit	vĕrū	
a diſh	diſcus	2
a ſpoon	cochlĕāre	
a ſeat	sēdes	3
a chair	căthĕdra	
a bench	ſcamnum	
a table	menſa	
a carpet	tăpes	3
a napkin or *towel*	mappa	
a bed	lectus	2
a cheſt	ciſta	
a coffer or *trunk*	arca	

Inſtruments by which Men work.

212. Inſtruments of cutting are

a knife or *coulter*	cultĕr	2
an ax	ăſcĭa	
a ſaw	ſerra	

213. Tools for cleaving are

a mallet or *beetle*	mălleŭs	2
an hammer	tŭdēs	3
a wedge	cŭnĕus	2

214. For piercing there are

a needle	ăcus	4
an awl	sŭbŭla	
a goad	stĭmŭlus	2
a nail or *pin*	clāvus	2

215. Inſtruments about fire are

a fire-pan	bătíllum
tongs	forceps
bellows	follis

216. Inſtruments of cleanſing are

a beſom or *bruſh*	ſcōpa
a file	līma

217. Inſtruments of ſpinning are

a wheel	girgíllus
a ſpindle	fūſus
a diſtaff	cŏlus

218. Inſtruments of muſick

a drum	tympănum
a pipe	tĭbĭa
a whiſtle or *flagellet*	fiſtŭla
a trumpet	tŭba
an harp	lyra
a fiddle	fĭdes

219. Inſtruments of ſtriking are

a club	fuſtis
a rod or *wand*	virga
a bat or *ſtick*	băcŭlus
a whip or *ſcourge*	flāgrum

220. Tools of Husbandry are

an harrow or *rake*	raſtrum
a fork	furca
an hook	falx
a ſpade	līgo
a ſieve	crībrum
a fan	vannus

221. Inſtruments of catching are

a net	rēte
an hay-net	caſſis
an hook	hāmus

222. The **Ship-man's** instruments are

a pole	contus	2
an oar	rēmus	2
an anchor	ánchŏra	

223. Instruments of **shutting** are

a bolt or *bar*	peſsŭlus	2
a lock	sĕra	
a key	clāvis	

Recreation.

224. When **work is over** there is

leiſure	ōrĭum	
quiet	quĭēs	3
ſleep	ſomnus	2
play	lūdus	2
wraſtling	luĉta	
dice	ālĕa	

Societies of Men.

225. Men **join together into**

a family	fămĭlia	
a corporation	cīvĭtas	
a kingdom	regnum	
a ſchool	ſchŏla	
a church	ecclēsĭa	

226. In a **Family** are

a husband	vĭr	2
a wife	uxŏr	
the Lord or *Mr.*	Dŏmĭnus	2
the Lady or *Dame*	Dŏmĭna	
the Maſter	hĕrus	2
the miſtreſs	hĕra	
a ſervitor	mĭnĭſter	2
a man-ſervant	fămŭlus	2
an hand-maid	ancílla	

227. In a **Corporation** are

a citizen	cīvĭs	
a magiſtrate	magiſtrātus	4
a judge	jūdex	
an umpire	árbĭter	2

228. With a **Trader** is

intereſt mony	fœnus	3
ware	merx	
pepper	pĭpĕr	3
cinnamon	cinnămōmum	
ſugar	ſăcchărum	
frankincenſe	thūs	3

229. Before the **Judge** appear

the bail	vās	3
the ſurety	præs	

230. In a **Kingdom** is

the King	Rex	
the Queen	Regĭna	
the people	pŏpŭlus	2

231. The **King** hath

a throne	thrŏnus	2
a ſceptre	ſceptrum	
a crown	cŏrōna	

232. The **People** are

the nobles	prŏcĕres	3 *pl.*
the commonalty	plēbs	
the rabble	vulgus	2

233. A **company** of People is

a rout	turba	
a tribe	trĭbus	4
a nation	nātio	
a clan	gens	

234. In a **School** are

the maſter	măgíſter	2
the ſcholar	diſcĭpŭlus	2

235. Rulers in the **Church** are

Jesus Christ	Jēsūs / Christus	4 / 2
an Apostle	Apóstŏlus	2
a Bishop	Episcŏpus	2
a Priest or *elder*	Presbyter	2
a Deacon	Diáconus	2
a Prophet	Vates	3

Of War.

236. Men should live in

peace	pāx	
league	fœdus	3

But sometimes there happens

a quarrel	rixa	
strife	līs	
threats	mĭnæ	
a fight	pugna	
a battel	prælĭum	
a war	bellum	

237. To **War** are needfull

a leader	dŭx	
a souldier	mīlĕs	
a guarder	cuſtōs	

238. A **company** of **Souldiers** is

a troop	turma	
a band	cŏhors	
an army	exércĭtus	4

239. The **Conquerour** gets

plunder or *spoil*	ſpŏlĭum	
the prey	præda	
a triumph	triŭmphus	2

Of a Funeral.

240. For the **dead** they make

a funeral or *burial*	fūnus	3
a funeral pile	rŏgus	2
a tomb	tumba	

Of computing.

241. The thing computed is

any whole, eſtate, foot, pound or *As*	assis	
half of an As	ſemissis	
one twelfth part of it, an inch or ounce	úncĭa	

242. If these be reckoned by weight there is

a pound	lĭbra	pondo
half a pound	ſemissis	
an ounce weight	uncia	

N. B. Pondo *is not an* Aprote Singular *and* Plural, *as has all along been thought, but always the* Ablative Singular, *and is added to shew that* uncia, &c. *are then rated by* weight, *not by* tale *or* meaſure.

243. For weighing there is

a balance	lĭbra	
a ſcale	lanx	
a weight	pondus	3

Of Figures.

244. A round body is

a bowl or *globe*	glŏbus	2
a ball	pīla	
an orb	orbis	

A body

A body not round hath

a corner or *angle*	ángŭlus	2

245. If it be not even there is

a wrincle	rūga	
a furrow	ſulcus	2
a balk or *ridge*	līra	
a plight or *fold*	plĭca	
a lap, boſom or *bay*	sĭnus	4

Of Signs.

246. A **ſign** of a thing is

an idea	ĭdĕa	
an image	ĭmāgo	
an idol	īdōlum	
a mark or *title*	tĭtŭlus	2

247. A ſign of a **thought** is

a ſpeech	ſermo	

248. In a **ſpeech** are

a letter	litĕra	
a ſyllable	ſyllăba	
a word	verbum	

249. A **ſpeech** is

a tale or *fable*	fābŭla	
a fame or *talk*	fāma	
a report or *rumour*	rūmor	
a meſſage	núncĭum	
an hiſtory	hiſtŏrĭa	
a joke or *jeſt*	jŏcus	2
a ſong	mūſa	
a prayer	prĕx	

250. A ſpeech **writ down** is

a letter or *epiſtle*	epiſtŏla	
a book	lĭber	2
a bible	bĭblĭa	*pl.* 2

251. For **writing** there is

a pen	penna	
ink	sēpia	
paper	pāpyrus	2
	or charta	

252. He that tells by ſpeech is

a meſſenger	núncĭus	2
a witneſs	teſtis	
an interpreter	intérprĕs	3

253. Of Nouns Subſtantive you have heard

enough	sătis	
or *too much*	nĭmis	

§ 2. A

§ 2. A VOCABULARY:

Or, Exemples of Nouns Adjective.

N. B. Here follow the moſt uſed *Adjectives*, which cannot ſtand alone in a ſentence, and therefore ſome of the *Subſtantives* are here ſet down again, and their *Adjectives* added to them.

253. Qu.

What a thing is't	Qualis

A. The thing is

ſuch	tālis
good	bŏnus
bad	mălus
current, right-good	prŏbus
naughty, faulty	prāvus
comely, handſome	pulcer
foul, ugly	fœdus
wonderfull	mīrus

254. A **good** thing is

fit or *fitting*	aptus
convenient, uſefull	idōnĕus
acceptable	grātus

255. A **bad** thing is

vain	vānus
troubleſome	moléſtus
direfull	dirus

256. As to it's **value** a thing is

worthy	dignus
dear, high-prized	cārus
cheap, low-prized	vīlis

257. As to **neatneſs** a thing is

clean	mundus
ſilthy	turpis
laſty	ſpurcus

258. As to its **ſtate** it is

well, ſafe	ſalvus
proſperous	proſper
happy	fēlix
wretched, miſerable	mīsĕr

259. A thing **compared** to another is

diverſe, various	vărĭus
like	sīmĭlis
or *unlike*	diſsĭmĭlis
æqual or *even*	pār
unæqual or odd	impār

260. A thing **untainted** is

pure	pūrus
meer or *ſheer*	mĕrus
ſincere	ſincērus

261. A thing **tainted** is

counterfeit, baſtard	ſpūrĭus
rotten	pŭtris

262. As to its **motions** a thing is

gentle	lēnis
ſtrong, earneſt	vĕhĕmens
ſwift, quick	cĕler
nimble, fleet	vēlōx
ſlow, tardy	tardus

263. As to its **weight** it is

heavy, grievous	grāvis
light	lĕvis

264. As to the **time** of its continuance a thing is

freſh, late	rĕcens
new	nŏvus
old	vĕtus 3
eternal	æternus

265. As to its **ſeaſonableneſs** it is

ſeaſonable, timely	tempeſtīvus
haſty-ing	feſtīnus
late, lag	sērus
ripe	matūrus
or *unripe*	immatūrus

266. As to its **figure** a thing is

ſtreight, right	rectus
crooked	curvus
hooked	uncus

267. To the **Sight** a thing is

white	albus
black	nīger 2
coal-black	āter 2
yellow	flāvus
tawny	fulvus
red	rūber 2
red-haired	rūfus
grey-haired, hoary	cānus

268. To the **Taſt** a thing is

ſweet	dulcis
bitter	ămārus
harſh, or *tart*	ăcerbus

269. To the **Smell** a thing is

ſweet-ſented	ſuāvis
ſtinking	tēter 2

270. To the **Hearing** a ſound is

loud	sŏnōrus
or *hoarſe*	raucus

271. To the **Touch** a Body is

plain	plānus
even	æquus
ſmooth	lævis
or *rough, ſharp*	aſper 2

272. A thing **dedicated** to God is

ſacred, holy	săcĕr 2
others are *profane*	prŏfānus

273. A **ſign** of a thing is

true	vērus
or *falſe*	falſus
certain	certus
or *doubtfull*	dŭbĭus

274. A **Spirit** is

good, gracious	pĭus
or *graceleſs*	ĭmpĭus

275. A **Body** is

ſtrong or *firm*	firmus
or *tender*	tĕnĕr 2
ſolid	sŏlĭdus
or *hollow*	cāvus

276. **Nature** is

fruitfull	ūbĕr 3
or *barren*	ſtĕrĭlis

277. A **Day** is

an holy-day	feſtus
or *a work-day*	profeſtus

278. The **Months** are 12.

January	Januārĭus
February	Februārĭus
March	Mārtĭus
April	Aprīlis
May	Maĭus
June	Jūnĭus
July	Jū ĭus
Auguſt	Augúſtus

September

September	Septémber	3
October	Octóber	3
November	Novémber	3
December	Decémber	3

279. A **place** is

full	plēnus
or *empty*	inānis

280. As to its **placing** a thing is

right, on the right	dexter	2
or *left*	ſiniſter	2
facing upwards	ſūpīnus	
facing downwards	prōnus	
wandring	vāgus	

281. The **Air** is

clear, not cloudy	sērēnus

Water is

clear, not muddy	límpĭdus

Light is

clear or *bright*	clārus

A **Shade** is

dark or *dull*	obſcūrus

282. **Earth** is

dry	ſiccus

A **Stone** is

hard	dūrus

Silk is

ſoft	mollis

A **Twig** is

lith	lentus

The **Sea** is

calm	tranquillus

283. An **Animal** is

wakefull	vĭgil
alive	vīvus
or *dead*	mórtŭus
ſound, well	sānus
or *ſick, faint*	æger 2
ſafe and ſound	ſoſpĕs
or *wounded*	ſaucĭus
fat	pinguis
or *lean*	mācĕr 2

284. An **irrational animal** is

brutiſh	brutus
tame	cĭcŭr
or *wild*	fĕrus

285. An animal by its **powers**

potent, able	pŏtis
or *impotent*	impŏs
knowing	gnārus
or *ignorant*	ignārus
active, brisk	gnāvus
or *ſluggiſh, idle*	ignāvus

286. For **want** of ſome powers an animal is

blind	cæcus
deaf	ſurdus
dumb	mūtus
lame or *halt*	claudus

287. As to **action** an animal is

cunning, ſage	sāgus	
or *dull, blockiſh*	hĕbĕs	
brisk, chearfull	ălăcer	3
or *ſlow, backward*	pĭgĕr	2
ſmart	acĕr	3
or *ſluggiſh, lazy*	ſegnis	

288. After much action it is

weary	feſſus
tired	laſſus

289. **Hair** is

flagged	flaccus
or *frizled*	criſpus

290. An

290. An **Head** without hair is

bald	calvus

A **skin** is either

ſmooth, bare	glăber	2
or *hairy, rough*	hirsūtus	

A **body** without a covering is

naked, bare	nūdus

291. A **Stomach** is

hungry, faſting	jejūnus	
or *full, ſatisfied*	sătŭr	2

292. A Man as to his **underſtanding** is

wiſe	săpĭens
or *unpoliſht, rude*	rŭdis
fooliſh	ſtultus
ſenſeleſs	fătŭus

293. As to his **diſpoſition** he is

mild, meek	mītis
or *cruel, fierce*	ſævus
chaſt, pure	caſtus
or *wanton*	laſcīvus
ſevere	ſevērus
ſtern	atrōx
barbarous	bárbărus
or *gracious*	clēmens

294. As to his private **manners** he is

holy	ſanctus
ſober	sōbrĭus
or *drunken*	ēbrĭus
brave, ready	ſtrēnŭus
ſtout, valiant	fortis

295. In his **carriage** to others he is

juſt	juſtus
or *unjuſt*	injúſtus
free or *liberal*	largus
courteous	cōmis
or *ſurly*	trŭx
faithfull, truſty	fīdus
or *unfaithfull*	infīdus
friendly	amīcus
or *unfriendly*	ĭnimīcus

296. By his **poſſeſſions** a Man is

rich	dīvēs	
or *poor*	paupĕr	3
or *beggarly*	mendīcus	

297. As to his **ſtate** he is

free, a freeman	lĭbĕr	2
or *bond, enſlaved*	ſervus	

298. As to his **age** he is

young	jŭvĕnis
old, an old perſon	sĕnex

299. As to **ſociety** a Man is

alone	sōlus
or *aſſociate*	sŏcĭus
ſingle, unmarried	cœlebs
or *married*	mārĭtus

300. He that hath **loſt** his Relations is

bereft, forlorn	orbus
or *widowed*	vĭdŭus

301. A Man's **countenance** is

cheary, merry	hĭlăris
or *ſorrowfull*	mœſtus
blithe, kind	blandus
or *ſcrew*	torvus
or *ſowr*	tetrĭcus
joyous	lætus
or *ſad*	triſtis

302. **Goods** are

ones own, proper	prŏprĭus
or *commune*	commūnis
private	prĭvus

or *pub-*

or *publick* pūblĭcus

303. **Meat** undreſſed is

raw crūdus

Dreſſed meat is

wholeſome sălūber 3

304. Before the **Judge** appears

the accuſed rĕus
either *guilty* ſons
or *guiltleſs* inſons

305. Qu.

How big is it quantus
A. *ſo big, ſo much* tantus
great magnus
little parvus
huge ingens
big grandis
or *ſmall, ſlender* exĭlis
dwarfiſh nānus
over big, too great nĭmĭus

306. As to its **length** a thing is

long longus
or *ſhort* brĕvĭs

307. As to its **breadth** a thing is

broad lātus
or *narrow* anguſtus
ample, large amplus
vaſt vaſtus

308. As to its **bulk** it is

thick, bulky craſſus
or *ſlender* grăcĭlis
or *thin* tĕnŭis

309. As to its **height** it is

high altus
lofty celſus
tall prōcĕrus
or *low* hŭmĭlis

310. Qu.

how many quŏt *und.*

A. Things are

ſo many tŏt *und.*
one ūnus
two dŭo
three trēs
four quātŭor
five quinquĕ
ſix ſex
ſeven ſeptem
eight octo
nine nŏvĕm
ten dĕcĕm
twenty vīginti
thirty trīginta
an hundred centum
a thouſand mille
both ambo

undeclined

311. As to their **number** things are

ſingle, one by one ſingŭlus
double, twain, twins gĕmĭnus
many multus
or *few* paucus
half sēmis
or dimĭdĭus
all omnis

312. As to number of times a thing is

often, thick crēber
frequent frĕquens
or *ſeldom, rare* rārus

313. Qu.

of what number or *in what order* is it } quŏtus ?

A. Q

A. *of ſuch a number*	tŏtus
it is *firſt*	prīmus
ſecond	sĕcundus
third	tĕrtĭus
fourth	quartus
fifth	quintus
ſixth	ſextus
ſeventh	ſĕptĭmus
eighth	octāvus
ninth	nōnus
tenth	dĕcĭmus
the middlemoſt	mĕdĭus

314. A thing **wanting** no part is

whole	tōtus	
entire	intĕger	2
all together	cunctus	

315. A thing **not whole** is

torn, mangled	lăcĕr	2
maimed	mŭtĭlus	
cripple	mancus	

316. Hereafter you ſhall learn

more	plūs	3
even *the reſt*	cæter	2

CHAP. VI.

Concerning a Pronoun.

Q. NOW *that you have learned the* Nouns, *both* Subſtantive *and* Adjective, *next tell me what is a* Pronoun?

317. *A.* A *Pronoun* is a word that may be uſed inſtead of any *Noun Subſtantive*, as

Inſtead of my Name I ſay *I*, Ego.
Inſtead of thy Name I uſe *Thou*, Tu.
Inſtead of his Name I ſay *He*, Ille.

Q. *How many ſuch words be there that be* Pronouns?

318. *A.* There be fifteen *Pronouns*; ego, tu, ſui, ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter, noſtras *and* veſtras.

To which may be added theſe, quĭd, quīs, cūjŭs, cūjās, ăllus, īdem, ullus, nullus, qui, quidam, uter, neuter, alter.

The

The Pronouns.

319. Q. *What* is it	quĭd
who? or *which* is it	quĭs
An. It is *I*	ĕgo
thou	tū
that	illĕ
or	ĭs
or	iſtĕ
ones ſelf	ipſĕ
the ſame	ĭdem
ſome one	quĭdam
any one	ullŭs
no one or *none*	nullus
that, which, who	quī
320. Q. *which* or *whether* of the two	ŭtĕr 2
either, or one of the two	altĕr 2
neither of the two	nēutĕr 2
321. Q. *Who's* is it	cūjŭs
A. it is *mine*	mĕŭs
thine	tŭŭs
its own	sŭŭs
ours	nōſtĕr 2
yours	vēſtĕr 2
their own	sŭŭs
322. Q. *Of what tribe*	cūjās
A. He is *of our tribe*	nōſtrās
of your tribe	vēſtrās

Q. *Are theſe* Pronouns Subſtantive *or* Adjective?

323. *A.* Quid, ego, tu, and ſui are *Pronouns Subſtantive*, all the reſt are *Pronouns Adjective.*

CHAP. VII.

Of a Verb.

Q. *THus you have ſeen the* Nouns *and the* Pronouns, *now tell me what is a* Verb?

324. *A.* A *Verb* is a part of ſpeech that betokeneth to Be, to Do, or to Suffer.

Q. *Which words then are* Verbs?

325. *A.* All thoſe words are *Verbs*, which betoken either to Be, or to Do, or to Suffer, *i. e.* to be done or acted upon.

Q. *How many ſorts of* Verbs *are there?*

326. *A.* There are three ſorts of *Verbs.*

I. Some betoken *to Be*, as eſſe *to be*, fĭĕri *to become*, călēre *to be hot*, and ſuch are called *Verbs Neuter.*

II. Some

II. Some betoken *to Do*, as āmāre *to love*, āgĕre *to act*, audīre *to hear*; and theſe are called *Verbs Active.*

III. Some betoken *to be done*, or *to be acted upon*, as āmāri, *to be loved*, āgi *to be done*, audīri *to be heard*; and theſe are called *Verbs Paſſive.*

327. N. B. *All* Verbs (*except* eſſe) *have their firſt ending either,*

1. *In* āre *or* āri } { 3. *In* ĕre *or* i
2. *In* ēre *or* ēri } { 4. *In* ire *or* īri.

Thoſe that end in are *or* ari, ire *or* īri *and* eri (*except* fiĕri) *have the laſt Vowel but one ever long, ſo they need not be marked; thoſe that end in* ēre *are marked long, and thoſe in* ĕre *ſhort.*

A Vocabulary of *Verbs*, eſpecially Primitive.

§ 1. *Exemples of* Verbs Neuter.

328. **A Verb Neuter betokens**

to be	eſſe

329. **That which is uſes**

to become	fiĕri
to grow	créſcĕre
to continue or *abide*	mănēre

330. **Where nothing is the thing uſes**

to be empty	văcare
to want or *be without*	cărēre
to want or *need*	ĕgēre

331. **Things good or bad uſe**

to be pleaſing, to please	plăcēre
to be harmfull, to harm	nŏcēre
to be painfull, to pain	dŏlēre

332. **As to their ſtate things uſe**

to be able	poſſe
to be well or *ſtrong*	vălēre
to be brisk, to thrive	vĭgēre
to pine or *languiſh*	languēre
to ſwell	tŭmēre
to ſtrut	turgēre

333. **As to its poſture it uſes**

to lie along	jăcēre
to hang	pendēre
to ſtick or *cleave to*	hærēre
to be aloft, to towr	mĭnēre

334. **Animals in danger uſe**

to be in fear	pavēre
to be ſad	mœrēre
to be amazed	ſtŭpēre

335. **To the ſenſes things uſe**

to lie fair, to appear	pārēre
to be open or *plain*	pătēre
to lie hid, to lurk	lătēre

336. To the **Eye** things appear

to be glowing white	candēre
to be green	vĭrēre
to be clear	līquēre
to be neat, to glister	nĭtēre

337. To the **Touch** they appear

to be cold	frīgēre
to be warm	tĕpēre
to be hot	călēre
to be moist	hūmēre
to be wet	mădēre
to be dry	ārēre
to be stiff	rīgēre

338. To the **Ear** they appear

to be silent	sīlēre

339. That they **act** so or so **uses**

to be allowed	lĭcēre
to like them	lĭbēre
or *to list*	*or* lŭbēre

§ 2. *Exemples of Verbs Active.*

340. A **Verb Active** signifies

to act, or *to do*	ăgĕre

341. That which **acts** ought

to begin to act	cœpīsse
to begin a work	ordīri
to carry on	gĕrĕre
to finish or *end*	finire
to make or *do*	făcĕre

342. To **make** is

to create	crĕare
to frame or *fashion*	fingĕre
to form	formare

343. To **act** is

to move	mŏvĕre
to urge	urgĕre
to stop or *to stay*	sīstĕre
to manage or *rule*	rĕgĕre
to change	mūtare
to let, *to let alone*	sĭnĕre
to leave, *to forsake*	linquĕre
to bear	fer're
to endure or *suffer*	păti
to have	hăbĕre

344. To **move** a thing is

to stir or *raise* it	cĭĕre
to shake it	quătĕre
to turn it	vĕrtĕre

345. To **move** it **forward**

to lead it	dūcĕre
to thrust it	trūdĕre
to drive it	pĕllĕre
to rowl it	vŏlvĕre
to send or *fling* it	mittĕre
to cast or *throw* it	jăcĕre
to draw it	trăhĕre
to carry it	vĕhĕre

346. The **thing moving** said

to go	īre
to come	vĕnire
to follow	sĕqui
to give way, or *go off*,	cēdĕre
to flee	fŭgĕre
to stray or *rove*	errare
to leap or *jump*	sălire

347.

347. To **ſtay** a thing is

to put or *lay* it	pōnĕre
to faſten or *fix* it	fīgĕre
to prop it	fulcire
to lay it flat	ſternĕre

348. What is **not faſt** uſes

to tremble	trĕmĕre
to totter	lăbare
to ſink	sīdĕre
to ſlide or *ſlip*	lābi
to fall	cădĕre
to ruſh or *tumble*	ruĕre

349. To **manage** a thing is

to appeaſe it	mulcĕre
to bend it	flectĕre
to bow it	clīnare
to ſtretch it	tendĕre

350. To **change** a thing is

to encreaſe it	augĕre
to ſtuff it	farcire
to fill it	plēre
to bereave it	prīvare
to adorn it	ornare

351. To have a thing is

to take or *contain* it	cŭpĕre
to hold it *faſt*	tĕnĕre
to keep or *ſave*	ſervare

352. **Good** things uſe

to nouriſh	ălĕre
to cheriſh	fŏvĕre
to bleſs or *make happy*	bĕare
to comfort	sōlari
to help	jŭvare
to allure or *entice*	lăcĕre

353. **Evil** things uſe

to hurt or *harm*	lædĕre
to vex	angĕre
to affright	terrĕre
to trouble or *diſturb*	turbare

354. One thing **oppoſed to** another uſes

to rub it	frĭcare
to wear it *away*	tĕrĕre
to daſh againſt it	fligĕre
to bend towards it	vergĕre

355. **Fowl** things uſe

to fowl	inquīnare
to blot or *blur*	măcŭlare
to dawb or *bedawb*	līnĕre
to anoint	ungĕre

356. **Lightſome** bodies uſe

to ariſe	ŏrīri
to ſhine	lūcēre
to glitter or *twinkle*	mĭcare

357. **Darkſome** bodies uſe

to cloud or *overſpread*	nūbĕre
to veil	vēlare
to cover	tĕgĕre
to hide or *concele*	cēlare

Acts of Lifeleſs things.

358. **Fire** uſeth

to burn or *be kindled*	ardēre
to blaze	flāgrare
to burn or *ſcorch*	ūrĕre
to toſte or *roſte*	torrēre

359. **Water** uſes

to trickle	mānare
to guſh	ſcātēre
to flow	flŭĕre
to boil up	fervēre
to rain	pluĕre
to water	rĭgare

The Acts of Animals

360. Animals are wont

to be born	nasci
to live	vivĕre
to sense or feel	sentire
to remove or flit	migrare

361. Their life impowers them

to be able	quire
to dare or venture	audēre
to try	ex-pĕriri
to study or labour	stŭdēre
to master or obtain	pŏtiri

362. That which studies uses

to endeavour	cōnari
to strive or strain	nīti
to seek after	pĕtĕre
to beware of	căvēre
to avoid, shun	vītare

363. To master a thing is

to get or obtain it	nanciſci
to use or make use of	ūti
to enjoy	frŭi

364. That they may live they uſe

to feed or be fed	veſci
to eat	ĕdĕre
to drink	bĭbĕre
to ſwallow	vŏrare
to play or ſport	lūdĕre
to ſleep	dormire

365. To ſenſe or percieve by ſenſe is

to ſee a thing	vĭdēre
to hear it	audire
to ſmell it	ŏdīrari
to taſt it	guſtare
to touch it	tangĕre

366. That things may be ſenſed they ought

to ſound	sŏnare
to taſt of or ſavour	săpĕre
to ſmell or caſt a ſmell	ŏlēre
that is *to ſmell ſweet*	frāgrare
or to *ſtink*	fœtēre

367. To ſound is

to clang	clangĕre
to make a noiſe	strĕpĕre
to crake	strīdēre
to crack, give a crack	crĕpare
to tinkle or to ring	tinnire
to roar	frĕmĕre
to thunder	tŏnare

368. When they remove they uſe

to ſtep or go	grădi
to walk	ambŭlare
to go a foot pace	vădēre
to run	currĕre
to creep or crawl	rĕpĕre
to wriggle	serpĕre
to ſwim	nare
to flie	vŏlare

369. When they do not g they uſe

to ſtand	stare
to ſit	sĕdēre
to lie down	cŭbare *or* cumbĕre

370. Animals when oppreſſed uſe to eaſe themſelves, that is

to belch	ructare
to break wind	pēdĕre
to ſpit or ſpue	spŭĕre
to vomit	vŏmĕre
to make water	meiĕre
to dung	căcare

371. Whe

371. When **ill** they uſe

to weep	flēre
to mourn	lūgēre
to complain	quĕri
to ſhiver	horrēre
to rave	fūrĕre
to die	mŏri

372. Their **young ones** they uſe

to get or *beget*	gĕnĕre *or* gigněre
to bear or *bring forth*	părĕre
to nurſe	nūtrire

373. **Live things** they uſe

to hunt	vēnari
to ſtrangle	ſtrangūlare
to kill	nĕcare

Acts of their members.

374. With their **Limbs** they uſe

to climb	ſcandĕre
to fight	pugnare
to ſtrike againſt	of-fendĕre
to crop	carpĕre
to pluck	vellĕre

375. With their **head** they uſe

to nod	nŭĕre

376. With their **eys** they uſe

to ſpie	ſpĕcĕre
to ken or *diſcern*	cernĕre
to behold or *look to*	tŭĕri
to view	luſtrare

377. With their **mouth** they uſe

to gape	hĭare
to breath	ſpīrare
to ſteam or *breath out*	hālare

378. With their **voice** they uſe

to cry out	clāmare
to wail	plōrare
to groan	gĕmĕre
to ſing	cănĕre
to mutter	mūtire
to howl	ŭlŭlare
to ſneez	ſternuĕre
to ſnore	ſtertĕre

379. **Particularly**

an horſe uſes *to neigh*	hinnire
an aſs *to bray*	rūdĕre
a bullock *to low*	mūgire
a lion *to roar*	rūgire
an hog *to grunt*	grunnire
a dog *to bark*	lātrare
a ſheep *to bleat*	bālare

380. With their **tongue** they uſe

to lick	lingĕre
to lap	lambĕre
to ſuck	sūgĕre

381. With the **lips** they uſe

to ſip	ſorbĕre
to ſmack or *taſt*	lĭbare
to ſnarl or *grin*	ringĕre

382. With the **teeth** they uſe

to gnaſh	frendĕre
to champ or *chew*	mandĕre
to gnaw	rōdĕre
to bite	mordĕre

383. With their **nails** or **claws** they are able

to peel	glūbĕre
to claw	ſcābĕre

to scratch	scalpere
to tear	lănĭare

The Acts of Men.

384. A Man is able

to know or *understand*	scire
to remember	měmĭnisse
to will	velle
or *to nill*	nolle
and *to perform*	pătrare

385. That he may understand he ought

to consider	consĭdĕrare
to meditate or *muse*	mĕdĭtari
to know or *take knowledge of*	noscĕre
and *to deem* or *decree*	censĕre

386. It's the act of his judgment

to judge	jūdĭcare
to approve or *like*	prŏbare
to esteem or *prize*	æstĭmare
to condemn	damnare
to think	pŭtare
	or opĭnari
to suppose	rĕri
to believe	crēdĕre
to trust	fĭdĕre

387. What they prize they use

to love	ămare
to wish for	optare
to hope	spērare
to desire or *covet*	cŭpĕre
to long for	ăvēre
to seek	quærĕre
to favour	favēre
to joy or *rejoice in*	gaudēre
to wonder or *admire*	mirari

388. What they dislike they use

to hate	ōdisse
to contemn or *despise*	témnĕre
to scorn	spernĕre
to fear, or *dread*	tĭmēre
	or mĕtŭere

The Duty of Man.

389. It's the duty of Man

duely to regard	cōlĕre
to consult	consŭlĕre
to care	cūrare
to make ready, *prepare*	părare
to serve or *deserve*	mĕreri
to discharge	fungi

390. When a Man does not his duty he is said

to fail or *deceive*	fallĕre
to sin	peccare

391. To do well uses

to become one	dĕcĕre

392. The conscience of an ill act uses

to pain or *dissatisfie*	pœnĭtĕre
to irk or *grate*	pĭgēre
to vex or *weary*	tædēre
to shame	pŭdēre

The Acts of our Members.

393. With our mouths we use

to laugh	rīdēre
to talk	lŏqui

to spea

to ſpeak	fāri
to prate	garrire
to hold our peace	tăcēre

394. By our **ſpeech** we uſe

to aſk	rŏgare
to tell	narrare
to confeſs	fătēri
to ſay or *to affirm*	dīcĕre *or* aiĕre
to deny	nĕgare

395. The particular uſes of ſpeech are

to ſwear	jūrare
to vow	vŏvēre
to admoniſh	mŏnēre
to advize	ſuādēre
to exhort	hortari
to call for or *require*	poſcĕre
to bid or *command*	jŭbēre
to bid or *invite*	invitare
to forbid	vĕtare
to call	vŏcare
to pray	prĕcari
to beſeech	ōrare
to promiſe or *engage*	ſpondēre
to praiſe	laudare

396. With our **hands** we uſe

to give	dăre
to take	sūmĕre
to bring forth	prōmĕre
to ſnatch	răpĕre
to lift or *take up*	tollĕre
to carry	portare
to feel or *grope*	palpare
to lay hold of, *to catch*	prendĕre
to clap hands	plaudĕre
to ſtrike the breaſt	plangĕre

Their acts about ſeveral things.

397. If there be **diverſe** things they are able

to number them	nŭmĕrare
to gather or *chuſe*	lĕgĕre
to mix or *mingle*	miſcēre
to join	jungĕre
to knit together	nectĕre
to divide	dīvĭdĕre
to diſtribute or *give out*	trĭbuĕre

398. That which is

open	they uſe to	*ſhut*	claudĕre
ſhut		*to fling open*	pandĕre
hid		*to ſhew*	monſtrare
dubious		*clear*, *make out*	argŭĕre

399. That which **withſtands** them they are able

to ſtrike	īcĕre
to beat or *overcome*	vincĕre
to tame or *ſubdue*	dŏmare

400. **Water** Men are wont

to draw	haurire
to powr or *powr out*	fundĕre

401. **In water** they uſe

to waſh	lăvare
to waſh off	lŭĕre
to dip	tingĕre
to plunge or *drown*	mergĕre
to ſoke	imbŭĕre

402. **Animals** Men uſe

to feed	paſcĕre
to milk	mulgĕre
to clip or *ſhear*	tondĕre

403. Men in **dealings** uſe

to ſell	vendĕre
to buy	ĕmĕre
to ow	dĕbĕre

404. Their **habitations** they uſe

to found	fundare
to build up	ſtrŭĕre
to inhabit, to dwell in	hăbĭtare

405. Their **victuals** they uſe

to dreſs or cook	cŏquĕre
to roſte	aſſare
to fry	frĭgĕre
to boil or ſeeth	elixare
to pickle	condire

406. When Men **eat a meal** they are ſaid to

to break-faſt	jentare
to dine	prandĕre
to ſup	cœnare

Mens acts by inſtruments.

407. With an **inſtrument** Men are able

to thump or knock	rundĕre
to break	frangĕre
to burſt	rumpĕre
to ſtrain	ſtringĕre
to preſs or ſqueez	prĕmĕre
to twiſt or wreath	torquĕre
to beat or knock	cellĕre

408. With a **weapon** they uſe

to ſtrike or hit	fĕrire
to keep off	arcĕre
to defend	de-fendĕre

409. With a **ſharp inſtrument** they uſe

to cut	sĕcare
to ſlaſh	ſcindĕre
to cleave	findĕre
to ſmite or to hack	cædĕre
to prick	pungĕre
to bore	fŏrare
to grave	ſculpĕre
to write	ſcrĭbĕre

410. With a **cleaning** inſtrument they uſe

to wipe	tergĕre
to ſweep or bruſh	verrĕre
to purge or cleanſe	purgare
to rub out	de-lĕre
to clear or ſnuff	mungĕre
to poliſh	pŏlire

411. With a **Bond** they are able

to ty	ligare
to bind	vincire
to gird	cingĕre
to hoop	vĭĕre

And then they uſe

to looſe or looſen	ſolvĕre

The acts of ſome particular ſtates of Men.

412. It's the act of a **Ruler**

to reign	regnare
to govern	gŭbernare
to eſtabliſh a law	ſancire
to puniſh	pūnire *or* plectĕre

413. It's the duty of the **ruled**

to obey	obēdire
to fear, ſtand in aw	vĕrēri

414. It's

414. It's the work of the **Teacher**

to teach	dŏcēre

And of the **Learner**

to learn	diſcĕre
to imitate	ĭmĭtari

415. The **Phyſician**'s work is

to heal or cure	mĕdēri

416. **Craftſmen** uſe

to ſew	sŭĕre
to patch	ſarcire
to knit	nĕre

417. The **Husbandman** ought

to dig	fŏdĕre
to plow	ărare
to ſow	sĕrĕre
to mow or *reap*	mĕtĕre

418. The **Gardiner**'s work is

to plant	plantare
to ſet	pangĕre
to rank or *diſpoſe*	sĕrĕre

419. It's the work of the **Dreſſer**

to comb	pectĕre
to trim up	cōmĕre
to cloath or *array*	ămĭcire
to put on	indŭĕre
to put off	exŭĕre

420. They that make **Bread** ought

to pounce	pinsĕre
to grind	mŏlĕre
to knead	depsĕre

421. That which **acts oft** is ſaid

to uſe or *be accuſtomed*	sŭĕre
to uſe or *be wont*	sŏlēre
to exerciſe	exercēre

§ 3. *Of Verbs Paſſive*

Q. *Thus you have ſeen Verbs* Neuter *and Verbs* Active, *now proceed to tell me how are Verbs* Paſſive *made?*

422. *A.* A Verb paſſive is formed from the *Active* by changing

1. āre *into* āri *as* { amare *to love*, amari *to be loved.* / creare *to create*, creari *to be created.* / mutare *to change*, mutari *to be changed.* }
2. ēre *into* ēri, *as* { docere *to teach*, doceri *to be taught.* / habere *to have*, haberi *to be had.* / tenere *to hold*, tenēri *to be held.* }
3. ĕre *into* i, *as* { lĕgĕre *to reade*, legi *to be read.* / emĕre *to buy*, emi *to be bought.* / agere *to doe*, agi *to be done* }

N. B. *But* ferre *to bear hath* ferri *to be born, and* facere *to doe hath* fieri *to be done.*

4. īre

4. īre *into* īri, *as* { audire *to hear*, audiri *to be heard*. / punire *to punish*, puniri *to be punished*. / finire *to finish*, finiri *to be finished*.

N. B. *Thus of Actives in* re *are made Passives in* i.

Now tell me the Passives of these Verbs Actives following,

laudare	flēre	dēbēre	mŏvēre	ărare
sumĕre	haurire	nūtrire	răpĕre	frangĕre
suadēre	inquīnare	sentire	căpĕre	mordēre, &c.

§ 4. *Of Verbs Common.*

Q. *Is there no more to be known about Verbs?*

423. *A.* Yes, there are yet *three* things to be known about Verbs.

Q. *Which is the first thing?*

424. *A.* I. Some Verbs in *i* signifie both to *act* and to *be acted upon*, and so are both *Active* and *Passive*, and are therefore called Verbs Common, as

solari { *to comfort*, and / *to be comforted* } | hortari { *to exhort*, and / *to be exhorted* } | metiri { *to measure*, and / *to be measured*.

§ 5. *Of Verbs Deponent.*

Q. *Which is the second thing yet to be known?*

425. *A.* II. Most of the *Commons* now signifie onely *Actively*, having *laid aside* the *Passive* signification, and are therefore called Verbs Deponent.

Q. *What then is a Verb Deponent?*

426. *A.* A *Verb Deponent* is that which ends in *i*, as a *Common*, but signifies onely Actively *to Doe*, so

1. *In* āri, *as* fari *to speak*, meditari *to muse*, venari *to hunt*, &c.
2. *In* ēri, *as* verēri *to fear*, tueri *to look to*, mederi *to heal*, &c.
3. *In* i, *as* pati *to suffer*, gradi *to step*, mori *to die*, &c.
4. *In* īri, *as* mentiri *to lie*, ordiri *to begin*, experiri *to try*, &c.

Q. *Now tell me which of these Verbs are* Passive, *which* Common, *and which* Deponent?

ŏriri *to arise*,	ūti *to use*,	oscŭlari { *to kiss*, / *to be kissed*.
rumpi *to be burst*,	hauriri *to be drawn*,	fr[illegible]i *to enjoy*.
terreri *to be affrighted*,	cōnari *to endeavour*	

§ 6. *Of*

§ 6. *Of Verbs ſignifying perfectly* to have been, to have done, to have been done.

Q. *Which is the third thing to be farther known?*

427. *A.* III. That all the Verbs you have hitherto heard of, ſignifie **Imperfectly** *to be, to doe,* or *to be done*; but they muſt be turned into another ending to make them ſignifie **Perfectly** *to have been, to have done, to have been done.*

N. B. *Where obſerve that in every Verb you muſt exactly know,*

1. *The Infinite Imperfect.*
2. *The Infinite Perfect.*
3. *The Supine, of which you ſhall hear more in the next Chapter.*

Q. *Why are theſe three to be ſo exactly known in the firſt place?*

428. *A.* Becauſe theſe three are the principal endings of Verbs, and from theſe all the reſt are formed, as you ſhall ſee hereafter.

Q. *Tell me then how ſhall I know theſe three endings in every Verb?*

429. The Imperfect you have heard already, the Perfect and the Supine are formed from that Imperfect by theſe five Rules.

R. I. āre in the Imperfect is changed into āviſſe in the Perfect, and ātum in the Supine, as

creāre *to create*	creāviſſe *to have created*	creātum *to create*
formare *to form*	formaviſſe *to have formed*	formatum *to form*
laudare *to praiſe*	laudaviſſe *to have praiſed*	laudatum *to praiſe*

So form mūtare, errare, fundare, fōrare, ornare, and the reſt in āre.

Q. *Are all in* are *ſo formed?*

430. *A.* No, for dăre *to give* makes dĕdiſſe *to have given,* dătum *to give,* and ſtāre *to ſtand* makes ſtĕtiſſe *to have ſtood,* ſtatum *to ſtand.*

Q. *Which is the ſecond Rule?*

432. *A.* R. II. Theſe Verbs in ere are formed by changing ēre in the Imperfect into ēviſſe in the Perfect, and ētum in the Supine, as

flēre *to weep*	flēviſſe *to have wept*	flētum *to weep*
nere *to ſpin*	neviſſe *to have ſpun*	netum *to ſpin*
plere *to fill*	pleviſſe *to have filled,*	pletum *to fill*
delere *to blot out*	deleviſſe *to have blotted out*	deletum *to blot out*
vĕre *to hoop*	vieviſſe *to have hooped*	vietum *to hoop*
ſuēre *to uſe*	ſueviſſe *to have uſed*	ſuetum *to uſe*

Q. *Which*

Q. *Which is the third Rule?*

433. *A.* R. III. Other Verbs in ēre change ere in the Imperfect into üiſſe in the Perfect, and ĭtum in the Supine, as

cĭēre *to ſtir*	civiſſe *to have ſtirred*	cĭtum *to ſtir*
ſtudēre *to ſtudy*	ſtudüiſſe *to have ſtudied*	ſtudĭtum *to ſtudy*
habēre *to have*	hăbüiſſe *to have had*	hăbĭtum *to have*

So form calēre, monēre, debēre, valēre, pudēre, and the reſt in ēre.

N. B. *But ſome have the ſhort* i *of the Supine caſt away, as*
tenēre *to hold*, tenuiſſe, ten'tum *for* tenĭtum,
docēre *to teach*, docuiſſe, doc'tum *for* docĭtum,
miſcēre *to mingle*, miſcuiſſe, miſtum *or* mixtum *for* miſcĭtum,
ſorbēre, ſorbuiſſe, ſorptum *for* ſorbĭtum,
but torrēre, torruiſſe, toſtum; cenſere, cenſuiſſe, cenſum.

Q. *Are all in* ēre *ſo formed?*

434. *A.* No, for there are four Exceptions.

Except. 1. In ſome the *u* is left out, ſo that they have not *uiſſe* but *iſſe*, as

vĭdēre	vīdiſſe	vīſum	fŏvēre	fōviſſe	fōtum
sĕdēre	sēdiſſe	ſeſſum	mŏvēre	mōviſſe	mōtum
prandēre	prandiſſe	pranſum	vŏvēre	vōviſſe	vōtum
ſtridēre	ſtridiſſe	——	fervēre	ferviſſe	——
căvēre	cāviſſe	cautum	păvēre	pāviſſe	——
făvēre	fāviſſe	fautum			

435. Except. 2. In four of theſe the firſt Letter is doubled with a Vowel, as

pendēre	pĕpendiſſe	penſum	tondēre	tŏtondiſſe	tonſum
mordēre	mŏmordiſſe	morſum	ſpondere	ſpŏſpondiſſe	ſponſum

436. Except. 3. Some take in an *s* before *iſſe*, and ſo make *ſiſſe*, as

mănēre	manſiſſe	manſum	mulgēre	mulxiſſe	mulctum
jŭbēre	juſſiſſe	juſſum	frīgēre	frixiſſe	——
augēre	auxiſſe	auctum	lūcere	luxiſſe	——
lūgēre	luxiſſe	luctum			

437. Except. 4. Of theſe in *ſiſſe* ſome caſt off the Letter before *ſiſſe*, as

rīdēre	rīſiſſe	rīſum,	tergēre	terſiſſe	terſum
ſuādēre	ſuāſiſſe	ſuāſum	turgēre	turſiſſe	——
ardēre	arſiſſe	arſum	urgēre	urſiſſe	——
audēre	——	auſum	torquēre	torſiſſe	torſum-tum
mulcēre	mulſiſſe	mulſum	hærēre	hæſiſſe	hæſum

Q. *Which*

Q. *Which is the fourth Rule for the Perfect and Supine?*

438. *A. R.* IV. Verbs in ĕre make the Perfect and Supine by changing ere in the Imperfect into uiſſe in the Perfect, and ĭtum in the Supine, as

ălĕre *to nouriſh*	ălŭiſſe *to have nouriſhed*	ălĭtum *to nouriſh*
mŏlĕre *to grinde*	mŏlŭiſſe *to have ground*	mŏlĭtum *to grind*

frĕmĕre	frĕmŭiſſe	frĕmĭtum
gĕmĕre	gĕmŭiſſe	gĕmĭtum
vŏmĕre	vomŭiſſe	vŏmĭtum
but cellĕre	cellŭiſſe	celſum
cŏlĕre	cŏlŭiſſe	cultum
conſŭlĕre	conſŭlŭiſſe	conſultum
răpĕre	răpŭiſſe	raptum
and velle (*for* volere)	voluiſſe ——	
nolle (*for* nolere)	noluiſſe ——	

gĕnĕre, *old*, } *now* gignĕre }	gĕnŭiſſe	genĭtum
ſtrĕpĕre	ſtrĕpŭiſſe	ſtrĕpĭtum
sĕrĕre *to rank*	ſerŭiſſe	ſertum
pinsĕre	pinsŭiſſe	piſtum
texĕre	texŭiſſe	textum
săpĕre	săpŭiſſe	——
ſtertĕre	ſtertuiſſe	——

Q. *Are all in* ĕre *formed* ŭiſſe ĭtum?

439. *A.* No, there are eleven Exceptions.

Except. 1. Some caſt away a Letter before *uiſſe*, as

lĭnĕre	lĭviſſe	lĭtum
sĭnĕre	ſiviſſe	sĭtum
sĕrĕre *to ſow*	sēviſſe	sătum
pōnĕre	pŏsŭiſſe	pŏsĭtum

but mĕtĕre, meſsŭiſſe, meſſum.

440. Except. 2. Some take a long ī before uiſſe, and have ĭtum long, as

pĕtĕre	pĕtīviſſe	pĕtītum
cŭpĕre	cupīviſſe	cŭpītum
quærĕre	quæsīviſſe	quæsītum
tĕrĕre	trīviſſe	trītum

441. Except. 3. The reſt in *ere* caſt off the *u*, and make *iſſe*, as

bibĕre	bĭbiſſe	bĭbĭtum
glŭbere	glŭbiſſe	glŭbĭtum
lambĕre	lambiſſe	——
ſcăbĕre	ſcăbiſſe	——
īcĕre	īciſſe	ictum
ĕdĕre	ēdiſſe	ēſum, eſtum
sĭdĕre	sĭdiſſe	——
pandere	pandiſſe	panſum & paſſum
mandere	mandiſſe	manſum
ſcandere	ſcandiſſe	ſcanſum
de- of- fendere	fendiſſe	fenſum

prendĕre	prendiſſe	prenſum
fŏdere	fōdiſſe	foſſum
cūdere	cūdiſſe	cuſum
rūdĕre	rūdiſſe	——
lĕgĕre	lĕgiſſe	lectum
fŭgĕre	fŭgiſſe	fŭgĭtum
vellĕre	velliſſe & vulſiſſe	vulſum
cœpĕre	cœpiſſe	cœptum
ĕmĕre	ēmiſſe	emtum
verrĕre	verriſſe	verſum
vertĕre	vertiſſe	verſum

fiſtĕre

ſiſtĕre	ſtĭtiſſe	ſtătum	nŭĕre	nuĭſſe	nūtum
imbŭĕre	imbŭiſſe	imbūtum	ſternŭĕre	ſternŭiſſe	ſternūtum
trĭbuĕre	trĭbŭiſſe	tribūtum	ſpŭĕre	ſpŭiſſe	ſpūtum
ăcŭĕre	ăcŭiſſe	ăcūtum	ruĕre	ruiſſe	rŭĭtum
indŭĕre	indŭiſſe	indūtum	mĕtŭĕre	metuiſſe	——
exŭĕre	exuiſſe	exūtum	ſuĕre	sŭiſſe	sūtum
argŭĕre	arguiſſe	argūtum	ſolvere	ſolviſſe	ſolūtum
lŭĕre	lŭiſſe	lūtum	volvere	volviſſe	volūtum
plŭĕre	plŭiſſe	——			

442. Except. 4. Some of theſe in *iſſe* loſe a Letter, as

vincere	vīciſſe	victum	fundĕre	fūdiſſe	fuſum
ſcindere	ſcĭdiſſe	ſciſſum	linquĕre	liquiſſe	lictum
findere	fĭdiſſe	fiſſum	rumpere	rūpiſſe	ruptum

443. Except. 5. And ſome in *iſſe* change a Letter, as

făcere	fēciſſe	factum	frangĕre	frēgiſſe	fractum
jăcĕre	jēciſſe	jactum	căpĕre	cēpiſſe	captum
ăgĕre	ēgiſſe	actum			

444. Except 6. Some double in the Perfect, as

diſcĕre	dĭdĭciſſe	——	tundĕre	tŭtŭdiſſe	tunſum
poſcĕre	pŏpoſciſſe	——	tangĕre	tĕtĭgiſſe	tactum
parcĕre	pĕpercīſſe / parſiſſe } parſum		pangĕre	pĕpĭgiſſe & panxiſſe } pactum	
cădĕre	cĕcĭdiſſe	caſum	pungĕre	pŭpŭgiſſe & punxiſſe } punctum	
cædĕre	cĕcīdiſſe	cæſum			
pĕdĕre	pĕpēdiſſe	pēdĭtum	fallĕre	fĕfelliſſe	falſum
cre-dĕre	crē-didiſſe	crēdĭtum	pellĕre	pĕpŭliſſe	pulſum
ven-dĕre	ven-dĭdiſſe	venditum	cănĕre	cĕcĭniſſe	cantum
pendĕre	pĕpendiſſe	penſum	părĕre	pĕpĕriſſe	partum
tendĕre	tĕtendiſſe	tenſum	currĕre	cŭcurriſſe	curſum

445. Except. 7. Some take in an *s* before *iſſe*, and ſo make *ſiſſe*, as

dīcĕre	dixiſſe	dictum	clangĕre	clanxiſſe	——
dūcere	duxiſſe	ductum	plangĕre	planxiſſe	planctum
rĕgĕre	rexiſſe	rectum	cingĕre	cinxiſſe	cinctum
tĕgĕre	texiſſe	tectum	lingĕre	linxiſſe	linctum
fīgĕre	fixiſſe	fixum	tingere	tinxiſſe	tinctum
frīgĕre	frixiſſe	frixum	mingĕre *old* / *now* meiĕre } minxiſſe		mictum
flīgĕre	flixiſſe	flictum			
angĕre	anxiſſe	——	fingĕre	finxiſſe	fictum

fingĕre

pingĕre	pinxiſſe	pictum	prōmĕre	promſiſſe	promtum
ringere	rinxiſſe	rictum	sūmĕre	ſumſiſſe	ſumtum
ſtringere	ſtrinxiſſe	ſtrictum	rēpere	repſiſſe	reptum
ungĕre	unxiſſe	unctum	ſerpĕre	ſerpſiſſe	ſerptum
jungere	junxiſſe	junctum	carpĕre	carpſiſſe	carptum
mungĕre	munxiſſe	munctum	ſcalpĕre	ſcalpſiſſe	ſcalptum
sūgĕre	ſuxiſſe	ſuctum	ſculpĕre	ſculpſiſſe	ſculptum
cōmĕre	comſiſſe	comtum			

445. Except. 8. Of which ſome change the Letter before *ſiſſe*, as

ſcrībĕre	ſcripſiſſe	ſcriptum	prĕmĕre	preſſiſſe	preſſum
nūbĕre	nupſiſſe	nuptum	gĕrĕre	geſſiſſe	geſtum
cēdĕre	ceſſiſſe	ceſſum	ūrĕre	uſſiſſe	uſtum
trăhĕre	traxiſſe	tractum	quătĕre	quaſſiſſe	quaſſum
vĕhĕre	vexiſſe	vectum	vīvĕre	vixiſſe	victum
cŏquĕre	coxiſſe	coctum			

447. Except. 9. Some others leave out the Letter before *ſiſſe*, as

rādĕre	rāſiſſe	rāſum	mergĕre	merſiſſe	merſum
vādĕre	vāſiſſe	vāſum	temnĕre	temſiſſe	temtum
lædĕre	læſiſſe	læſum	flectere	flexiſſe	flexum
dīvĭdĕre	dīviſiſſe	dīviſum	nectere	nexiſſe & nexŭiſſe	nexum
rōdere	rōſiſſe	rōſum	pectĕre	pexiſſe & pexŭiſſe	pexum
lūdĕre	lūſiſſe	luſum	plectere	plexiſſe & plexŭiſſe	plexum
trūdere	trūſiſſe	trūſum	mittĕre	mīſiſſe	miſſum
claudere	clauſiſſe	clauſum			
plaudere	plauſiſſe	plauſum			
ſpargĕre	ſparſiſſe	ſparſum			

448. Except. 10. Some take in a Letter before *ſiſſe*, as

fluĕre	fluxiſſe	fluxum	ſtruĕre	ſtruxiſſe	ſtructum

449. Except. 11. Some few are otherwiſe formed, as

păſcĕre	pāviſſe	paſtum	ſpernere	ſprēviſſe	ſprētum
crēſcĕre	crēviſſe	cretum	ſternere	ſtrāviſſe	ſtrātum
nōſcĕre	nōviſſe	nōtum	ferre	tŭliſſe	lātum
tollere	ſuſtŭliſſe	ſublātum	eſſe	fŭiſſe	—
cernere	crēviſſe	crētum	poſſe	pŏtŭiſſe	—

Q. *Which is the fifth Rule to form the Perfect and Supine?*

450. *A. R.* V. Verbs in ire are formed by changing ire in the Imperfect into iviſſe in the Perfect and ītum in the Supine, as

audīre

audīre *to hear*	audīvīſſe *to have heard*	audītum *to hear*
finīre *to end*	finīvīſſe *to have ended*	finītum *to end*
ſcīre *to know*	ſcīvīſſe *to have known*	ſcītum *to know*

So form mūgīre, rūgire, nūtrire, mūtīre, garrire, and the reſt in īre, but īre *to go* | īviſſe *to have gone* | ītum *to go*

Q. *Are all Verbs in* īre *ſo formed?*

451. *A.* No, there are *four* Exceptions.

Except. 1. Some caſt off the *i* and ſo make *uiſſe*, as

sălire	sălŭiſſe	ſaltum	ămĭcire	amĭcŭiſſe	ămictum

Except 2. Some caſt off the *u* too, and make *iſſe*, as

venire	vēniſſe	ventum

Except. 3. Some of theſe take in an *s*, and make *ſſiſſe*, as

vincire	vinxiſſe	vinctum	ſancire	ſanxiſſe	ſanctum

Except. 4. And of theſe ſome caſt away the Letter before *ſſiſſe*, as

fulcire	fulſiſſe	fultum	haurire	hauſiſſe	hauſtum
farcire	farſiſſe	fartum	ſentire	ſenſiſſe	ſenſum
ſarcire	ſarſiſſe	ſartum			

N. B. *Thus Verbs in* re *ſignifying* Imperfectly *that the thing is* a-doing *and not* perfectly done, *are turned into an ending in* iſſe *to betoken that it* hath done it perfectly, *and to them we have ſtill added the* Supine.

Q. *Are all Verbs ſo to be turned?*

452. *A.* No, for

1. Some Verbs have no Supines, as you have ſeen before.

2. Some have no Perfects, as audēre—auſum, gaudēre—gaviſum, fidēre—fiſum.

3. Some have no Perfect nor Supine, as vergere, furere, aiere, &c.

4. Some have no Imperfect, as—cœpiſſe cœptum, —meminiſſe mentum, —odiſſe oſum.

5. Verbs in *i* have no Perfect, but how they may be made to ſignify Perfectly you ſhall learn N°.

Q. *But have Verbs in* i *no Supine?*

453. *A.* Verbs Common and Deponent in *i* have a Supine by changing

1. ari *into* ātum, *as* ſolāri ſolātum, venāri venātum, conāri conātum.

2. ēri *into* ītum, *as* verēri verītum, tūēri tūītum, merēri meritum.

but fatēri *hath* faſſum, *and* rēri rātum, *and* medēri —.

3. By changing i into ītum, as mōri *to die*, mōrītum *to die*, but

lābi—	lapſum	fungi—	functum	ūti—	ūſum
naſci—	nātum	sĕqui—	sĕcūtum	frŭi—	frūĭtum & fructum
nanciſci—	nactum	lŏqui—	lŏcūtum		
obliviſci—	oblītum	quĕri—	queſtum	nīti—	nīſum & nixum
grădi—	greſſum	păti—	paſſum		

and fiĕri and veſci have no Supines.

4. īri *into* ītum, *as* mentīri—mentītum, pŏtīri—potītum,

but ordiri	orſum	ex-perīri	ex-pertum
ŏriri	ortum	metīri	menſum.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a Participle.

Q. *Thus you have ſeen the Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs, the next ſort of words is a Participle; what is a Participle?*

454. *A.* A Participle is a Part of Speech derived of a Verb, and betokens being, doing or ſuffering, as a Verb does, but is otherwiſe like a Noun.

Q. *Which Words then are Participles?*

455. *A.* All thoſe Words are Participles which

1. Are derived from ſome Verb.
2. Betoken *being*, *doing* or *ſuffering*, as a Verb does.
3. And are in other reſpects as Nouns.

Q. *How many ſorts of Participles are there?*

456. *A.* There are ſix ſorts of Participles.

Q. *How are theſe derived from their Verbs?*

457. *A.* The ſix ſorts of Participles are formed off from their Verbs according to theſe Rules.

458. *R. I.* From the Verb Infinite Imperfect are formed three Participles.

I. The Participle in *ans*, *ens* or *iens*, by changing

1. āre *or* āri *into* ans
2. ēre *or* ēri *into* ens
3. ĕre *or* ĭ *into* ens
4. īre *or* īri *into* iens

} and theſe ſignifie being or doing, as

1. *from*	văcāre	*to be empty,*	vacans	*being empty.*
	ămāre	*to love,*	amans	*loving.*
	mīrāri	*to wonder,*	mirans	*wondering.*
2. *from*	călēre	*to be hot,*	calens	*being hot.*
	dŏcēre	*to teach,*	docens	*teaching.*
	vĕrēri	*to fear,*	verens	*fearing.*
3. *from*	lĕgĕre	*to reade,*	legens	*reading.*
	ĕmĕre	*to buy,*	emens	*buying.*
	veſci	*to feed,*	veſcens	*feeding.*
4. *from*	audīre	*to hear,*	audĭens	*hearing.*
	haurīre	*to draw,*	haurĭens	*drawing.*
	mentīri	*to lie,*	mentĭens	*lying.*

459. II. The Participle in andus, endus *or* iendus, by changing

1. āri *into* andus
2. ēri *into* endus
3. ĭ *into* endus
4. īri *into* iendus

} And theſe in *dus* ſignifie paſſively to be done, or about to be done or acted upon, as

1. *from*	amāri	*to be loved,*	amandus	*one to be loved.*
	damnāri	*to be damned,*	damnandus	*one to be damned.*
	mīrāri	*to admire,*	mirandus	*one to be admired.*
2. *from*	dŏcēri	*to be taught,*	docendus	*one to be taught.*
	hăbēri	*to be had,*	habendus	*one to be had.*
	vĕrēri	*to fear,*	verendus	*one to be feared.*
3. *from*	lĕgi	*to be read,*	legendus	*one to be read.*
	frŭi	*to enjoy,*	fruendus	*one to be enjoyed.*
	născi	*to be born,*	nascendus	*one to be born.*
4. *from*	audīri	*to be heard,*	audiendus	*one to be heard.*
	nūtrīri	*to be nurſed,*	nutriendus	*one to be nurſed.*
	mĕtīri	*to meaſure,*	metiendus	*one to be meaſured.*

460. III. The firſt Supine in *tum* or *ſum*, of which you have heard already, Chap. VII. § 6.

Q. *Thus we have the three Participles formed from the Verb Imperfect, pray whence are the other three Participles formed?*

461. *R. II.* From the firſt Supine in *um* come three other Participles.

I. The latter Supine, by changing *um* into *u*, and it ſignifies Paſſively *to be done*, as from

amātum	*to love,*	amātu	*to be loved.*	audītum ——	audītu
lectum	*to reade,*	lectu	*to be read.*	doctum ——	doctu
factum	*to doe,*	factu	*to be done*	dictum ——	dictu

462. II. The Participle in *urus*, by changing *um* into *urus*, and it ſignifies about to be, or about to doe, as from

vacātum	*to be empty,*	vacātūrus	*one about to be empty.*
amātum	*to love,*	amātūrus	*one going to love.*
doctum	*to teach,*	doctūrus	*one about to teach.*
lectum	*to reade,*	lectūrus	*one about to reade.*
audītum	*to hear,*	audītūrus	*one about to hear.*
nexum	*to join,*	nexūrus	*one about to join.*
flexum	*to bend,*	flexūrus	*one about to bend.*
mŏrĭtum	*to die,*	mŏrĭtūrus	*one about to die.*

463. III. The Participle in *tus* or *ſus*, by changing *um* into *us*.

Q. *How doth this Participle in* tus *and* ſus *ſignifie? Actively? or Paſſively?*

464. *A.* The Participle in *tus* or *ſus*,

1. If it come from a Verb *Deponent* ſignifies *Actively having done*, as locūtum *to ſpeak*, locutus *having ſpoke*; lapſum *to ſlip*, lapſus *having ſlipped*; ratum *to ſuppoſe*, ratus *having ſuppoſed*, &c.

2. If it come from a Verb Common it ſignifies both *Actively* and *Paſſively*, as from

menſum *to meaſure*, menſus *having meaſured*, and *having been meaſured.*

oſcŭlātum *to kiſs*, oſcŭlātus *having kiſſed*, and *having been kiſſed.*

3. But if it come from any other Verb it ſignifies *Paſſively having done*, as from

ani

amātum *to love*, amātus *loved*, or *being loved*, or *having been loved*.
doctum *to teach*, doctus *taught*, or *being taught*, or *having been taught*.
lectum *to reade*, lectus *read*, or *being read*, or *having been read*.
audītum *to hear*, auditus *heard*, or *being heard*, or *having been heard*.

Q. *Which of theſe ſix Participles ſignifie Perfectly? and which Imperfectly?*

465. *A.* This Participle in *tus* or *ſus* ſignifies *Perfectly*, as locūtus *having ſpoke already*, doctus *being taught Perfectly*, the other Participles ſignifie *Imperfectly*, that the thing is doing, or about to do, but not perfectly done.

Q. *Are the Participles Subſtantive? or Adjective?*

466. *A.* The two Supines are Participles Subſtantive, all the reſt are Adjective, amātus *one loved*, amandus *one to be loved*.

Q. *Now tell me what Participles are formed from theſe Verbs?*

narrare	venari	farcire	ſarcire	vidēre
tenēre	gemĕre	fulcire	gerĕre	nectĕre
ſorbēre	quĕri	pellĕre	ſcire	monſtrare
vendĕre	frŭi	rumpĕre	conari	pŏlire, *&c.*

Q. *From theſe Supines what Participles are formed?*

narrātum	venātum	fartum	ſartum	vīſum
tentum	gĕmĭtum	fultum	geſtum	nexum
ſorptum	queſtum	pulſum	ſcītum	monſtrātum
vendĭtum	frŭĭtum	ruptum	conātum	polītum

And ſo far of Participles.

CHAP. IX.

Of Adverbs.

Q. *What is an Adverb?*

467. *A.* An Adverb is a Part of Speech moſtly joined to a Verb to ſhew *whether* or *no*, or *how*, or *where*, or *when* any thing *is*, *does* or *ſuffers*.

§. *The moſt uſual Adverbs, eſpecially Primitive.*

468. Q. *Whether? or no?* nŭm? ăn? nĕ?
is your brother come?
A. *Yes, yea* īmo, næ
yes indeed quīdem

almoſt fere *or* ferme
no, not nĕ, non, haud
ſcarcely vix
469. Q. *Where is he?* ŭbi

A. *here*	hīc
there	ĭbi
if any where	uſquam
no where	nuſquam
far off	prŏcŭl
nigh	prŏpĕ
470. *Whence came he*	unde?
A. *hence*	hĭnc
thence	inde
471. Q. *Whither goes he?*	quo?
A. *hither*	huc
472. Q. *When came he?*	quando
A. *then*	tunc, tŭm
when I came	cŭm
yesterday	hĕri
erewhile, ſome time ſince	dūdum
long ago	ōlĭm
473. Q. *How long ſtays he?*	quamdĭu?
A. *a long time*	dĭu
while I ſtay	dŭm
untill I go	dōnĕc
474. Q. *When returns he*	
A. *now*	nunc, jam
ſtraight, by and by	mŏx
if at any time, ever	unquam
never	nunquam
475. Q. *How oft doth he ride?*	quŏtĭes
A. *once*	sĕmĕl
twice	bĭs
thrice	tĕr
four times	quătĕr
oft	ſæpĕ
always	ſemper
476. Q. *How doth he act?*	quōmŏdo
A. *ſo, thus*	sĭc, ĭtă
raſhly	tĕmĕrĕ
in vain	fruſtrā
we act together	sĭmŭl
Q. *why?*	quārē? cŭr
477. Q. *How big is he?*	quām?
as big	tām
as I	quam
more big	măgis
than I.	quām

CHAP. X.

Concerning Prepoſitions.

Q. *WHat is a Prepoſition?*

478. *A.* A Prepoſition is a Word ſet before a Subſtantive, and betokens the reſpect one thing has to another, as that one thing is

before another or *behind* it,	*within* it or *without* it,	*beyond* it or *behither* it,	*above* it or *below* it, &c.

Q. *How many ſuch Prepoſitions are there?*

479. *A.* There be three and fourty Words that are Prepoſitions.

The

The Fourty three Prepoſitions.

480. § I.

ăd	*at, to*
advĕrsŭs	*towards*
ăpŭd	*at, with*
ante	*before*
cĭs / citra	*behither / ſhort of*
circum	*about, round*
circa	*about, nigh to*
contra	*againſt*
erga	*towards*
extra	*without, on the outſide*
intra	*within*
infra	*beneath, below*
inter	*between, among*
juxta	*beſide, nigh to*
ŏb	*for, becauſe of*
pĕnĕs	*with one, in ones keeping*
pĕr	*through, by*
pŏne	*behind*
poſt	*after, ſince*
prætĕr	*beſide*
propter	*nigh to,* and *for*
sĕcundum	*after, according to*
sĕcŭs	*by, cloſe by,*
ſupra	*above, over*
trans	*over, to the other ſide*
ultra	*beyond*

481. § II.

ăb *or* ā *or* ăbs	*from*
abſq;	*without, not with*
cŭm	*with, together with*
cōram	*before, in ones preſence*
clam	*out of ſight*
dē	*from,* and *concerning*
ex *or* ē	*out of*
pălam	*before, in ſight of*
præ	*before, more than*
prō	*for, inſtead of*
sĭne	*without, not with*
tĕnŭs	*up to*

482. § III.

ĭn	*in,* and *into*
sŭb	*under*
ſubter	*under*
sŭper	*above*

CHAP. XI.

Of a Conjunction.

Q. *What is a Conjunction?*

483. *A.* A Conjunction is a Word which joineth two Sentences together, thus

484. The King comes
and čt, quĕ, atq;
alſo, too quŏq;
the Queen comes.

485. *Neither* nĕq; nĕc
the King comes
nor nĕq; nĕc
the Queen comes.

486. *Either* aut, vĕl, vĕ
the King comes
or aut, vel, vĕ
the Queen comes.

487. The King comes not
but sĕd, aſt, ăt, autem
the Queen comes.

488. The King comes
becauſe quĭa
the Queen comes.

489. The King will not come
for năm, ĕnim
the Queen comes not.

490. The King comes
if ſi
the Queen comes.

491. The King comes not
unleſs nī, nĭſi
the Queen comes.

492. The King comes
therefore ergo, ĭgĭtŭr
the Queen comes.

493. *Although* quamquam
the King comes
yet, nevertheleſs tămĕn
the Queen comes not.

494. The King comes
that, to the end that ŭt, ŭti
the Queen ſhould come.

495. I heartily wiſh
that ŭt, ŭtinam
the Queen would come.

496. *So* ĭta
the King comes
as ŭt
the Queen comes

CHAP. XII.

Of an Interjection.

Q. *What is an Interjection?*

497. *A.* An Interjection is a Word which alone betokens ſom meaning of our mind, as

O! oh!	ō!	*wailaday! wo!*	hei! væ!
ſoho!	ēho! heus!	*phy, piſh*	phy! au!
lo, behold	ēn! ecce!	*huſh, whiſt*	ſt! au, &c.

N. B. *The Interjections are moſtly uſed to denote ſome ſudden paſſion of the mi*

N. B. *Thus you have learned the eight ſorts of Words uſed in ſpeaking, n tell me which of theſe Words are* Nouns, *which* Pronouns, *which* Verbs, &c.

tū	*thou*	ſuāvis	*ſweet*	ŭt	*that*
ĕgo	*I*	pŭer	*a boy*	mĕŭs	*mine*
trĕmĕre	*to tremble*	tămen	*yet*	eſſe	*to be*
phy!	*out upon't*	sōlus	*alone*	ēn!	*lo!*
tĕmĕre	*raſhly*	mŭlĭĕr	*a woman*	hīc	*here*
contra	*againſt*	arbor	*a tree*	currĕre	*to run*

CHA

CHAP. XIII.

Concerning the Declining of Words.

N. B. NOW *that you have ſeen* the eight Parts of Speech, *you muſt next learn which of them are* Declined *and which* Undeclined, *therefore,*

Q. *What is it to* Decline *a Word?*

498. *A.* To *Decline a Word* is to turn it into a divers ending.

Q. *To what purpoſe is a Word ſo turned into another ending?*

499. *A.* A Word is turned into another ending to notifie ſomething more to us than it did before, ſo that it not onely ſignifies *ſo* or *ſo*, but it *adſignifies* that, and ſomewhat more, as

homo *a man*, puer *a boy*, muſa *a ſong* } is turned into { hŏmĭnes *men*, pŭĕri *boys*, mūſæ *ſongs*.

N. B. 1. *Some Words in declining do increaſe and ſome do not.* 2. *To increaſe is to have more Syllables than it had before.*

Q. *May all ſorts of Words be ſo declined into other endings?*

500. *A.* No Words that are *Adverbs*, *Conjunctions*, *Prepoſitions* or *Interjections* can be thus turned into *freſh endings*, but all ſuch Words keep their *firſt* ending, and ſo are *Undeclined*, as sĕmĕl, ĕt, ăd, heu.

Q. *Which Words then are they that be declined?*

501. *A.* All Words that are *Nouns*, or *Pronouns*, or *Verbs*, or *Participles* may be *declined*.

N. B. *So then* four *ſorts of Words*, viz. { *Nouns*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Participles* } *are Declined*, | *and* four *ſorts of Words*, viz. { *Adverbs*, *Conjunctions*, *Prepoſitions*, *and Interjections* } *are Undeclined.*

Q. *Are all the Declined Words Declined after the ſame manner?*

502. *A.* No: Nouns, Pronouns and Participles are declined after *one* manner, and Verbs are Declined after *another* manner.

CHAP. XIV.

The Declining of Nouns, Pronouns and Participles.

Q. *Why are Nouns, Pronouns and Participles turned into other endings?*

503. *A.* Nouns, Pronouns and Participles are changed into another ending,

1. To adſignifie the Gender, as agnus *an he lamb*, agna *a ſhe lamb*.
2. To adſignifie the Number, as homo *one man*, homĭnes *more men*.
3. To adſignifie the Caſe, as homo *a man*, homĭnis *of a man*, &c.

§ 1. *Three Genders.*

Q. *How many Genders are there?*

503. *A.* As of things there be *three* kinds, 1. ſome *males*, 2. ſome *females*, 3. ſome *neither* males nor females:

So of the Words there are *three* ſorts, 1. ſome of the *Maſculine* Gender, 2. ſome of the *Feminine*, 3. ſome of the *Neuter*.

N. B. *And theſe have often different endings to diſtinguiſh them one from another.*

N. B. *Before Words of* { *the Maſculine Gender* / *the Feminine Gender* / *the Neuter Gender* } *they uſe to ſet* { hic / hæc / hōc } *as a mark to know them by.*

§. Rules for the Genders of Subſtantives.

Q. *Which Words are of the Maſculine Gender?*

505. *A.* R. I. Every Subſtantive that adſignifies a *male*, is of the Maſculine Gender, as

hic mās	*a male*	hic fīlius	*a ſon*
hic vĭr	*a man*	hic ĕquus	*an horſe*
hic Adāmus	*Adam*	hic aſĭnus	*an he-aſs*
hic Joannēs	*John*	hic agnus	*an he-lamb*
hic magiſter	*a maſter*	hic Rex	*a King*
hic pătĕr	*a father*	hic pŭer	*a boy*, &c.

Q. *Which Words are of the Feminine Gender?*

506. *A.* R. II. Every Subſtantive that adſignifies a *female*, is of the Feminine Gender, as

hæc fe-

hæc fœmĭna	*a female*	hæc fīlĭa	*a daughter*
hæc mulĭer	*a woman*	hæc ĕqua	*a mare*
hæc Eva	*Eve*	hæc asĭna	*a ſhe-aſs*
hæc Joánna	*Joan*	hæc agna	*a ſhe-lamb*
hæc măgiſtra	*a miſtreſs*	hæc Regĭna	*a Queen*
hæc măter	*a mother*	hæc pŭella	*a girl*, &c.

Q. *Are there no Words of* both *the Maſculine and Feminine Gender?*

507. *A.* R. III. Every Subſtantive that adſignifies both the *male* and the *female* is of the (*Common of two*, that is, it is *both* of the) Maſculine and of the Feminine Gender, as

hic & hæc părens	*a parent*	hic & hæc hærēs	*an heir*
hic & hæc fūr	*a thief*	hic & hæc cuſtōs	*a keeper*
hic & hæc dŭx	*a guide*	hic & hæc sūs	*an hog*, &c.

So hic părens is *an he-parent* or *a father*, hæc parens is *a ſhe-parent* or *a mother*, hic fūr *an he thief*, hæc fūr *a ſhe-thief*, &c.

Q. *Which Words are of the Neuter Gender?*

508. *A.* Every Subſtantive that adſignifies neither *male* nor *female* ſhould be of the *Neuter* Gender, but they are not *all* ſo; But ſome ſuch are of the *Neuter*, ſome of the *Maſculine*, ſome of the *Feminine*, and ſome *Doubtfull*.

Q. *How may I know which be of the* Neuter, *which of the* Maſculine, *and which of the* Feminine?

509. *A.* If the Subſtantive adſignifie *neither* male nor female, you may know what Gender it is of by its *termination*, for ſome terminations are Neuter, ſome Maſculine and ſome Feminine.

Q. *Which are the Neuter terminations?*

510. *A.* R. IV. Theſe nine { e, ū *and* l, / ŭm, mĕn *and* ăr, / ŭr, ūt *and* us, *if it increaſe*, } are Neuter terminations, and the Words that end in any of theſe are of the Neuter Gen.

1. In e, as hoc măre hoc rēte. 2. In ū, as hoc gĕnū, hoc cornū. 3. In l, as hoc ănĭmăl, hoc mĕl, hoc fĕl. Except hic & hoc ſal, and hic sōl. 4. In ŭm, as hoc regnŭm, hoc ſignum. 5. In mĕn, as hoc crĭmĕn, hoc fulmĕn. 6. In ăr, as hoc jūbăr. 7. In ŭr, as hoc jĕcŭr, hoc murmŭr. Except hic furfŭr, hic turtŭr. 8. In ūt, as hoc căpŭt. 9. In us increaſing, as hoc rūs rūris, hoc pectŭs pectŏris, hoc tempŭs tempŏris, hoc pĕcŭs pĕcŏris, &c.

Except { 1. hæc tellūs, hæc vĭrtūs, hæc sălus, hæc pălūs, hæc pĕcū-s-dis. / 2. hic mūs, hic lĕpŭs.

Theſe alſo are Neuters, hoc inguĕn, vĕrbĕr, pĭpĕr, păpāvĕr, ūbĕr, hoc marmŏr, cŏr, hoc æs, vās *a veſſel*, ŏs and ōs, and hoc crās, hoc lāc, hoc sătĭs, and hoc nīmĭs.

Q. *Which are the Maſculine Terminations?*

511. *A.* R. V. Theſe nine { n, o *and* er, / ŏr, nĭs *and* ōs, / ūs *not increaſing*, / ax *and* ex *in two-ſyllabled Words*, } are Maſculine terminations, as

1. In n, hic pectĕn, rēn, ſplēn. 2. In o, hic ſermo, mūcro, ordo, cardo, but

but the reſt in *do* and *go* are Fem. as hæc hirundo, hæc imāgo, ſo hæc cāro, and Verbals in io, hæc nātĭo. 3. In er, hic lĭber, carcer. 4. In ŏr, as hic colŏr, labŏr; but hæc arbŏr. 5. In nis, as hic ignis, crīnis, pānis. 6. In os, as hic flōs, mōs, rōs; but hæc cōs. 7. In ūs not increaſing, as hic mundus, hic fructus. Except hæc cōlus, dōmus, mānus, hūmus, vannus, fīcus, trĭbus, cryſtāllus, ſapphīrus. 8. and 9. Words of two Syllables in ax or ex, as hic cortex, hic frutex; but hæc fornax.

Moreover theſe are Maſculines, hic adămas, elĕphas, gĭgas, vās *a bail*, præs, līmĕs, gurgĕs, poplĕs, părĭĕs, tŭdĕs, tăpēs, lĕbēs, pēs.

And theſe in ĭs, orbis, faſcis, piſcis, callis, caulis, collis, follis, pollis, vermis, lăpis, torris, axis, enſis, menſis, caſſis, ſemiſſis, poſtis, fuſtis, pulvis, torquis, anguis, ſanguis, unguis.

And in ns, hic dens, nefrens, fons, mons, pons and grex, and hydrops.

Q. *Which are the Feminine Terminations?*

512. *A.* R. VI. Other Subſtantives ending in *a* or *s*, and all names of *Trees* are of the Feminine Gender, as hæc mūſa, hæc laus, hæc fraus, hæc fax, hæc ars, hæc ſupellex, hæc nex, hæc plēbs, hæc dăps, hæc mālus.

Q. *Which are doubtfull?*

513. *A.* R. VII. Some few are doubtfull, as hic *or* hæc dĭēs, hic or hoc vulgus, hæc *or* hoc hālec.

N. B. *Now turn back to the Nouns, and tell me of what Gender every one of them is.*

§. Rules for the Genders of Adjectives.

Q. *Of what Gender are Adjectives?*

514. *A.* All Words that are Adjective are of all the three Genders, as

hic felix	hic vĕtŭs	hic triſtis	hic ſuāvis	hic bonus	hic mălus
hæc felix	hæc vetus	hæc triſtis	hæc ſuavis	hæc bona	hæc mala
hoc felix	hoc vetus	hoc triſte	hoc ſuave	hoc bŏnum	hoc malum.

§ 2. *Of the two Numbers.*

Q. *How many Numbers are there?*

515. *A.* There be *two Numbers*, the *Singular* and the *Plural*. For one is a Singular Number, and *more* than one is a Plural Number.

Q. *Which Words are of the Singular Number?*

516. *A.* Thoſe Words are of the *Singular* Number which ſignifie *but one*, as hŏmo *a man*, püer *a boy*, mūſa *a ſong*.

Q. *Which Words are of the Plural Number?*

517. *A.* Thoſe Words are of the *Plural* Number which ſignifie *more than one*, as hŏmĭnes *men*, pŭĕri *boys*, mūſæ *ſongs*.

Q. *O*

Q. *Of theſe Words following which are of the Singular, and which of the Plural?*

terra *Land*	ſchŏla *a ſchool*	diſcĭpŭli *ſcholars*	porta *a gate*
arma *arms*	ſchŏlæ *ſchools*	diſcipŭlus *a ſcholar*	mœnĭa *walls*, &c.

§ 3. *Of the Six Caſes.*

Q. *How many Caſes are there?*

518. *A.* There be *ſix Caſes*,

the *Nominative*
the *Genitive*
the *Dative*
the *Accuſative*
the *Vocative*
the *Ablative*
} Caſe.

N. B. *And theſe Caſes have different endings to diſtinguiſh one from another.*

2. *And to* Decline *a Noun, Pronoun or Participle is to give the right endings of every Caſe in each Number.*

§ 4. *The Five Declenſions.*

Q. *How many ways are Nouns, Pronouns and Participles Declined?*

519. *A.* There are *five* ways of declining Nouns, Pronouns and Participles, which are called the *five Declenſions.* For ſome are declined after the *firſt* way, ſome after the *ſecond*, ſome after the *third*, ſome after the *fourth* and ſome after the *fifth.*

520. N. B. *Here note theſe* four *things, that in every Declenſion,*

1. *The Vocative Singular is the ſame with the Nominative Singular.*
2. *The Vocative Plural is ever the ſame with the Nominative Plural.*
3. *The Ablative Plural is ever the ſame with the Dative Plural.*
4. *All Words of the Neuter Gender have their Nominative, Accuſative and Vocative alike in both Numbers, and in the Plural Number theſe three Caſes end in ă.*

I. *The*

I. *The First Declension.*

Q. *What Words are of the first Declension?*

521. *A.* Words in ă are of the first Declension.

Q. *How are they Declined?*

522. *A.* Words of the first Declension have their

Nominative	of the Singular Number in	ă	*Nominative*	of the Plural Number in	æ
Genitive		æ	*Genitive*		ārum
Dative		æ	*Dative*		īs
Accusative		ām	*Accusative*		ās
Vocative		ă	*Vocative*		æ
Ablative		ā	*Ablative*		īs

Q. *Give me some Exemples of Words thus declined.*

523. *A.* Here follow **Exemples** of *three* sorts.

1.

		Singular		*Plural*
N.	hæc	mus-a	*a song*	mus-æ *songs*
G.		mus-æ	*of a song*	mus-ārum *of songs*
D.		mus-æ	*to a song*	mus-īs *to songs*
Ac.		mus-am	*a song*	mus-ās *songs*
V.	o	mus-ă	*o song*	mus-æ *o songs*
Ab.		mus-ā	*by a song*	mus-īs *by songs*

So decline mensa, terra, umbra, and all in *a* of two Syllables.

2.

		Singular		*Plural*
N.	hæc	balæn-a	*a whale*	balæn-æ *whales*
G.		balæn-æ	*of a whale*	balæn-ārum *of whales*
D.		balæn-æ	*to a whale*	balæn-īs *to whales*
Ac.		balæn-am	*a whale*	balæn-ās *whales*
V.	o	balæn-a	*o whale*	balæn-æ *o whales*
Ab.		balæn-a	*by a whale*	balæn-īs *by whales*

So decline natūra, fortūna, aurōra, prūina, and all in *a* of above two Syllables that have the last but one long.

3.

		Singular		*Plural*
N.	hæc	ánĭm-a	*a soul*	ánĭm-æ *souls*
G.		ánim-æ	*of a soul*	ánim-árum *of souls*
D.		ánim-æ	*to a soul*	ánim-īs *to souls*
Ac.		ánim-am	*a soul*	ánim-ās *souls*
V.	o	ánim-a	*o soul*	ánim-æ *o souls*
Ab.		ánim-a	*by a soul*	ánim-īs *by souls*

So decline materia, nebŭla, mĭnĕra, salvia, and all in *a* of above two Syllables that have the last Syllable save one short.

Q. *Are no Words of the first Declension but those that end in* a?

524. *A.* Some few Words in ās, as Satānās, Lucās, Thōmās, are of this first Declension, and make their Voc. Sing. in ā long, as

Singular

Singular	*N.*	hic Sátăn-as *Satan*	N. B. *Words of the firſt Declenſion, you ſee, do not increaſe in any Caſe ſave the Genitive Plural.*
	G.	Sátăn-æ *of Satan*	
	D.	Sátan-æ *to Satan*	
	Ac.	Sátan-am *Satan*	
	V.	o Sátan-ā *o Satan*	
	Ab.	Sátan-ā *by Satan*, &c.	

II. *The Second Declenſion.*

Q. *Which Words are of the Second Declenſion?*

525. *A.* All Words in *um*, and thoſe in *er* and *us* that are marked in the Vocabulary with the figure 2 are of the ſecond Declenſion.

Q. *How are Words of the Second Declenſion declined?*

526. *A.* Words of the ſecond Declenſion have their

Nom.	of the Singular Number in	ŭs, ĕr *or* ŭm	*Nom.*	in the Plural Number in	ī, *but Neut. in* ă
Gen.		ī	*Gen.*		ōrum
Dat.		ō	*Dat.*		īs
Acc.		ūm	*Acc.*		ōs *Neut. in* a
Voc.		ĕ, ĕr *or* ŭm	*Voc.*		ī, *and Neut. in* a
Abl.		ō	*Abl.*		īs

Q. *But here the Vocative Singular is not ever like the Nominative?*

527. *A.* Note, That when the Nominative in the Second Declenſion ends in ŭs the Vocative Singular endeth in ĕ, as hic Dóm'nŭs *a Lord*, Voc. o Dóm'nĕ *o Lord*. Except Deus o Deus, but filius and Proper Names in ius for ie have i, o fili, o Antoni.

Q. *Give me ſome Exemples of Words ſo declined.*

527. I. *Exemples of Words in* ŭs.

1.

Singular	*N.*	hic múnd-ŭs *the world*	*Plural* *N.* múnd-ī *worlds*
	G.	múnd-ī *of the world*	*G.* mund-órum *of worlds*
	D.	múnd-ō *to the world*	*D.* múnd-īs *to worlds*
	Ac.	múnd-ūm *the world*	*Ac.* mūnd-ōs *worlds*
	V.	o mund-ĕ *o the world*	*V.* o múnd-ī *o worlds*
	Ab.	múnd-ō *by the world*	*Ab.* múnd īs *by worlds*

So decline Dĕŭs, mŏdus, lŏcus, and all in us of two Syllables marked (2).

2.

Singular	*N.*	hæc cryſtáll-us *cryſtal*	*Plural* *N.* cryſtáll-i *cryſtals*
	G.	cryſtáll-i *of cryſtal*	*G.* cryſtall-órum *of cryſtals*
	D.	cryſtall-o *to cryſtal*	*D.* cryſtáll-īs *to cryſtals*
	Ac.	cryſtáll-um *cryſtal*	*Ac.* cryſtáll-ōs *cryſtals*
	V.	o cryſtáll-e *o cryſtal*	*V.* o cryſtall-i *o cryſtals*
	Ab.	cryſtáll-o *by cryſtal*	*Ab.* cryſtáll-īs *by cryſtals*

So

So decline ſapphīrus, rubīnus, cupreſſus, and all of above two Syllable that have the laſt ſave one long in us marked (2).

3.

Singular	*N.*	hic dómĭn-us *a lord*	Plural	*N.*	dómin-i *lords*
	G.	dómin-i *of a lord*		*G.*	domin-órum *of lords*
	D.	dómin-o *to a lord*		*D.*	dómin-īs *to lords*
	Ac.	dómin-um *a lord*		*Ac.*	dómin-ōs *lords*
	V.	o dómin-e *o lord*		*V.*	o dómin-i *o lords*
	Ab.	dómin-o *by a lord*		*Ab.*	dómin-īs *by lords*

So decline nŭmĕrus, tĕrmĭnus, ángĕlus, ănimus, and all of above *two Sy*lables that have the laſt but one ſhort, and are marked (2).

528. II. *Words in* ĕr.

Singular	*N.*	hic púĕr *a boy*	Plural	*N.*	púĕr-i *boys*
	G.	púĕr-i *of a boy*		*G.*	pŭĕr-órum *of boys*
	D.	púĕr-o *to a boy*		*D.*	púer-īs *to boys*
	Ac.	púĕr-um *a boy*		*Ac.*	púer-ōs *boys*
	V.	o púĕr *o boy*		*V.*	o púer-i *o boys*
	Ab.	púĕr-o *by a boy*		*Ab.*	púer-īs *by boys*

529. N. B. *There are ſix Subſtantives that thus increaſe ſhort,* puer, ad ter, brĕsbyter, *and* sŏcer *a father-in-law, and* gĕnĕr *a ſon-in-law, and* v vĭri, *all the reſt do not increaſe thus.*

Singular	*N.*	hic liber *a book*	Plural	*N.*	lib-ri *books*
	G.	lib-ri *of a book*		*G.*	lib-rórum *of books*
	D.	lib-ro *to a book*		*D.*	lib-ris *to books*
	Ac.	lib-rum *a book*		*Ac.*	lib-rōs *books*
	V.	o liběr *o book*		*V.*	o lib-ri *o books*
	Ab.	lib-ro *by a book*		*Ab.*	lib-rīs *by books*

So decline cancer, caper, ăger, făber, culter.

Singular	*N.*	hic magiſt-er *a maſter*	Plural	*N.*	magiſt-ri *maſters*
	G.	magiſt-ri *of a maſter*		*G.*	magiſt-rórum *of maſt*
	D.	magiſt-ro *to a maſter*		*D.*	magiſt-rīs *to maſters*
	Ac.	magiſt-rum *a maſter*		*Ac.*	magiſt-rōs *maſters*
	V.	o magiſt-er *o maſter*		*V.*	o magiſt-ri *o maſters*
	Ab.	magiſt-ro *by a maſter*		*Ab.*	magiſt-rīs *by maſters*

So decline miniſter, árbĭter.

N. B. *Thus far the Accuſative Plural is different from the Nominative Plural but in the ways of declining to come the Accuſative Plural is the ſame with the Nominative and Vocative Plural.*

530. III. *Wor*

530. III. *Words in* um.

Singular	*N.*	hoc regn-um *a kingdom*	*Plural*	*N.*	regn-ă *kingdoms*
	G.	regn-ī *of a kingdom*		*G.*	regn-ōrum *of kingdoms*
	D.	regn-o *to a kingdom*		*D.*	regn-īs *to kingdoms*
	Ac.	regn-um *a kingdom*		*Ac.*	regn-ă *kingdoms*
	V.	o regn-um *o kingdom*		*V.*	o regn-ă *o kingdoms*
	Ab.	regn-o *by a kingdom*		*Ab.*	regn-īs *by kingdoms*

So decline ſignum, nihilum, membrum, and all in um.

N. B. *For* nihilum *in the Nominative and Accuſative they oft ſay* nīhīl *and* nīl. *And ſo much for the ſecond Declenſion.*

III. *The Third Declenſion.*

Q. *Which Words are declined after the third way?*

531. *A.* All Words ending in *e*, *l*, *n* and *o*,
in *ar*, *or*, *ur* and *ut*,
in *as*, *us*, *os* and *s* with a Conſonant before it, and moſt ending in *er*, *es* and *us* are of the Third Declenſion.

Q. *How are theſe turned into the right ending of every Caſe?*

532. *B.* Words of the Third Declenſion have their

Nom. & *V.* *Gen.* *Dat.* *Acc.* *Abl.*	in the Singular Number in	e, l, n, &c. is ī ĕm ĕ	*Nom.* & *V.* *Gen.* *Dat.* *Acc.* *Abl.*	in the Plural Number in	ēs, *Neut. in* ă ŭm ĭbŭs ēs, *and Neut. in* ă ĭbus

Q. *Give me ſome Exemples of Words ſo declined?*

533. *A.* Here follow Exemples of three ſorts.

1. Of Words that do not increaſe in the Genit. as mărĕ mărĭs.
2. Of Words that increaſe with the laſt Syllable but one long, as virtūs, virtūtis.
3. Of Words that increaſe with that Syllable ſhort, as lăpĭs lăpĭdis.

I. *Exemples of Words not increaſing.*

Q. *Which Words in the third Declenſion do not increaſe in the Genitive Singular?*

534. *A.* All Words ending in e, and moſt in ēs and īs do not increaſe in the Genitive Singular, and theſe make the Genitive Plural in *ium*.

Singu-

1.

Singular	N.	hoc rēt-e *a net*	Plural	N.	ret-ia *nets*
	G.	ret-is *of a net*		G.	ret-ium *of nets*
	D.	ret-i *to a net*		D.	ret-ĭbus *to nets*
	Ac.	ret-e *a net*		Ac.	ret-ia *nets*
	V.	o ret-e *o net*		V.	o ret-ia *o nets*
	Ab.	ret-i *by a net*		Ab.	ret-ĭbus *by nets*

N. B. *Inſtead of* lacte *in the Nom. Accuſ. and Voc. they uſe* lac.

Q. *But here the Ablative does not end in* e *as it ſhould do.*

535. *A.* Neuters in *e* make the Ablative in *i*, and the Nominative Plural in *ia*, and the Genitive in *ium*.

So decline măre, cochleăre, altāre, and all in *e*.

2. es

Singular	N.	hæc nūb-ēs	Plural	N.	-ēs
	G.	-ĭs		G.	-ium
	D.	-ī		D.	-ĭbus
	Ac.	-ĕm		Ac.	-ēs
	V.	-ēs		V.	-ēs
	Ab.	-ĕ		Ab.	-ĭbus

3. is

Singular	N.	hæc peſt-ĭs	Plural	N.	-ēs
	G.	-is		G.	-ium
	D.	-i		D.	-ĭbus
	Ac.	-em		Ac.	-ēs
	V.	-is		V.	-ēs
	Ab.	-e		Ab.	-ĭbus

So decline vulpēs, fāmēs, sēdēs, fīnĭs, pōstĭs, pānĭs, colŭs, *&c.*

536. II. *Exemples of Words that increaſe long.*

Singular	N.& V.	căl-or	Plural	N.& V.	-ōres
	G.	-ōris		G.	-ōrum
	D.	-ōri		D.	-ōrĭbus
	Ac.	-ōrem		Ac.	-ōres
	Ab.	-ōre		Ab.	-ōrĭbus

Singular	N.& V.	ſerm-o	Plural	N.& V.	-ōnes
	G.	-ōnis		G.	-ōnum
	D.	-ōni		D.	-ōnĭbus
	Ac.	-ōnem		Ac.	-ōnes
	Ab.	-ōne		Ab.	-ōnĭbus

So decline Paſt-ŏr -ōris, anim-ăl -ālis, vēr vēris, æſt-ās -ātis, tell-ūs -uris, leo leōnis, lig-o -ōnis, mōs mōris, adăm-ās -antis, *&c.*

537. III. *Exemples of Words increaſing ſhort.*

Singular	N. V.	hic lăp-is	Plural	N.& V.	-ĭdes
	G.	-ĭdis		G.	-ĭdum
	D.	-ĭdi		D.	-ĭdĭbus
	Ac.	-ĭdem		Ac.	-ĭdēs
	Ab.	-ĭde		Ab.	-ĭdĭbus

Singular	N. & V.	mil-ĕs *a ſouldier*			
	G.	mil-ĭtis *of a ſouldier*			
	D.	mil-ĭti *to a ſouldier*			
	Ac.	mil-ĭtem *a ſouldier*			
	Ab.	mil-ĭte *by a ſouldier*, &c.			

So decline paſsĕr -ĕris, tŭd-ĕs -ĭtis, jud-ex -ĭcis, lim-ĕs-ĭtis, virg-o -ĭnis, *&c.*

Singular	N. Ac. V.	hoc corp-ŭs *a body*	Plural	A. Ac. V.	corp-ŏra *bodies*
	G.	córp-ŏris		G.	córp-ŏrum
	D.	córp-ŏri		D.	corp-óribus
	Ab.	córp-ŏre		Ab.	corp-óribus

Singular	N. Ac. V.	hoc nōm-en *a name*	Plural	N. Ac. V.	-ĭna *names*
	G.	-ĭnis		G.	-ĭnum
	D.	-ĭni		D.	-ĭnĭbus
	Ab.	-ĭne		Ab.	-ĭnĭbus

So decline gĕn-ŭs -ĕris, căp-ŭt -ĭtis, fœd-ŭs -ĕris, alūm-ĕn -ĭnis, *&c.*

Q. *But*

Q. *But ſeeing there is ſuch difference in declining Words of the third Declenſion, how ſhall we be ſure to decline them right in the Genitive Singular?*
A. That is to be known by theſe Rules.

1. *Rules about the Genitive Singular of the third Declenſion.*

538. *R.* I. e, ēs and is in the Nominative are changed into is in the Genitive, as măr-e -is, ret-e -is, nūb-es -is, fīdēs *a fiddle* fīdis, crīn-is -is, ſo aſſis, and in ſhort ās aſſis.

539. 1. *Except in* ēs.

1. *Some change* ēs *into* ētis, *as* lĕb-ēs, tăp-es, quī-es ētis.
2. *Some into* ēdis *as* hær-ēs, merc-ēs -ēdis, præs prædis, *but* pēs pĕdis.
3. *Some change* es *into* ĕtis, *as* ſeg-es, pari-es, ari-es, interpr-es -ĕtis.
4. *Some* ĕs *into* ītis, as līm-es, gurg-ĕs, pŏpl-ĕs, tūd-ĕs, mīl-es -ītis.
5. æs *copper hath* æris.

540. 2. *Except in* is.

1. *Some change* is *into* ĭdis, *as* ir-is, lap-is -idis.
2. lis *hath* lītis.

541. *R.* II. o *is changed into* ōnis, *as* le-o, ſerm-o, lig-o -ōnis, &c.
Except that all others in do *and* go *change* o *into* ĭnis *as* card-o -ĭnis, hirund-o marg-o virg-o, imag-o -ĭnis, *ſo* hom-o -ĭnis, *but* caro car'nis.

542. *R.* III. *Words in* c, d, l, n, r *and* t *have* is *put to them in the Genitive,*
ſo 1. ēc *makes* ēcis, *as* halēc-is.
2. id ĭdis, *as* Davĭd Davĭdis.
3. ăl ālis, *as* săl sālis; *but others in* ăl *have* ālis *long*, *as* anim-ăl -ālis, &c.
4. ēl ēlis, *as* Danĭēl -is, Samuĕl -is; *but* mĕl mellis, fĕl fellis.
5. īl īlis, *as* vĭgĭl -is.
6. ōl ōlis, *as* sōl sōlis.
7. ēn ēnis, *as* rēn rēnis, ſplēn ſplēnis, liēn liēnis.
8. *the reſt have* ĕn ĭnis, *as* ſulm-ĕn pect-ĕn, ingu-ĕn -ĭnis; *ſo* pollĕn (*and* pollis) pŏllĭnis, *and* ſanguĕn (*of old, now* ſanguis) ſanguĭnis.
9. īn ĭnis, *as* delphīn delphĭnis.
10. Dæmōn Dæmŏnis.
11. ăr ăris, *as* jūbăr júbăris.
12. ēr ĕris *as* vēr vēris; *but* æthēr æthĕris, *and* aēr áĕris.
13. ĕr ĕris, *as* paſsĕr -is, ciner (*and* cinis) cinĕris, pulver (*and* pulvis) pulvĕris, mŭlĭer mulĭĕris, *ſo* latĕr -ĕris, *but all others in* ter *caſt off the ſhort* e, *and make* tris, *as* venter ventris, pat-er, mat-er, frat-er -ris, *and ſo* imber imbris.
14. ŏr *hath* ŏris, *ſo* marm-ŏr -ŏris, arbŏr arbŏris, æquŏr -is, ădŏr ădŏris.
but 1. cor *hath* cordis. 2. *all others in* ŏr *have* ōris *long*, *as* calŏr calōris, col-ŏr, ſap-ŏr, hon-ŏr, ux-ŏr -ōris.
15. ūr ūris, *as* fūr fūris.
16. ŭr ūris, *as* ſulg-ŭr -ūris, *ſo* turtŭr, murmŭr, &c. *but three have* ŏris, fĕmŭr, jĕcŭr, rōbŭr, *Gen.* fĕmŏris, &c.
17. căpŭt capĭtis *for* capŭtis;

543. *R.* IV. *Words in* ās *have* ātis, *and in* ōs *have* ōtis, *as* æſtās æſtātis, civĭtās civĭtātis, cōs cōtis, nepōs nepōtis.

1. *Except in* ās, *as* mas măris, anās anătis, vās *a veſſel* vāſis, vas *a ſurety* vădis, **lampās lampădis**, *and three that have* antis, *as* adam-as, eleph-as, gig-as -antis.

2. *Except in* ōs, mos mōris, ros rōris, flōs flōris, ōs ōris, *but* bōs bŏvis, cuſtōs cuſtōdis, *and* ŏs ŏſſis.

544. *R.* V. ūs *hath* ūris, *ſo* tellūs tellūris, mūs, jūs, crūs, rūs, plūs, pŭs thūs -ūris.

Except 1. palūs palūdis, **laus laudis, fraus fraudis.**

2. Salūs ſalūtis, virtūs virtūtis.

3. Sūs ſuis, *and* grūs grŭis.

545. *R.* VI. ūs *is changed into* ŏris, *as* temp-us -ŏris, corp-ŭs -ŏris, frig-ŭs -ŏris, *ſo* hoc pecŭs pĕcŏris, &c.

Except 1. *Some have* ĕris, *as* gen-us -ĕris, ſidus, olus, latus, viſcus, ulcus, opus, munus, ſcelus, onus, fœdus, funus, pondus, vĕtus -ĕris

2. Hæc pecŭs pecŭdis.

546. *R.* VII. *Words in* ns *and* rs *change* s *into* tis, *as* amans amantis, mens mentis, mons montis, ars artis, par-s -tis, frons *a forehead* frontis. *but* frons *a leaf* frondis, *ſo* glan-s, juglan-s, nefren-s -dis.

547. *R.* VIII. *All other Words ending in* s *with a Conſonant juſt before it have an* i *put in between the Conſonant and the* s, *as* plĕbs plĕbis, urbs urbis, hiĕms hiĕmis, dăps dăpis, ſtĭps ſtĭpis, ŏps ŏpis, hydrōps hydrōpis, ſtirps ſtirpis, falx falcis, calx calcis, lanx lancis, arx arcis, merx mercis, *(ſo is* cs.) *So*

1. āx *hath* ācis, *as* pax, fornax, limax, audax, &c. pācis, &c. *but* fax făcis.

2. ĕx *hath* ĕcis, *as* prex prĕcis, nĕx nĕcis, *but* grex grĕgis, lĕx lĕgis, rex rĕgis, *but* ſupellex ſupellectĭlis, *and* ſenex ſenis.

N. B. *Here note that if a Word of more than one Syllable end in* s *and a Conſonant, and have a ſhort* ĕ *before the Conſonant, that ſhort* e *muſt in the Genitive be changed into a ſhort* i, *ſo* filĕx filĭcis *not* filĕcis, pumex pumĭcis, frutex, cortex, pulex, vertex, pollex, judex -ĭcis, cœlebs cœlĭbis, forceps forcĭpis.

3. ix *hath* īcis, *as* radix radīcis, cervix, perdix, felix -īcis, *but* falix falĭcis *and* nix nivis.

4. ōx *hath* ōcis, *as* vōx vōcis, atrōx atrōcis, *but* nox noctis.

5. ūx *hath* ūcis, *as* nūx nūcis, dūx dūcis, crūx crūcis, *but* 1. lūx lūcis, faucis, *and* 2. frūx frūgis.

II. *Rules for the other Caſes.*

548. *R.* I. *The* is *of the* Genitive *muſt be turned*

1. *Into* i *in the* Dative.

2. *Into* em *in the* Accuſative; *but* 1. *a few have* im, vis vim, ſitis ſitim, tuſſ-is -im. 2. *ſome both* em *and* im, *as* navis navem *or* navim; puppis puppem *or* puppim.

3. *In*

3. *Into* e *in the* Ablative, *as* nubis nube, pectoris pectore.

but 1. *ſome have* i *as all Neuters in* e, al *and* ar, *as* maris mari, animālis animali, calcaris calcari, *(except* jubaris jubare) *and all Adjectives that have* e *in the Neuter, and thoſe that have* im *in the* Accuſative, *as* vis vim vi, tuſſis tuſſim tuſſi, *&c.*

2. *Some have both* e *and* i, *as* unguis, amnis, turris, civis, ignis, navis, *&c. and all* Adjectives *as* felice *or* felici, *except* juvenis, ſenex, pauper, ſoſpĕs.

549. *R.* II. e *in the* Ablative *muſt be turned into* es *in the* Nominative *and* Accuſative Plural, *and in* Neuters *into* a, *as* nube nubes, virgin-e -es, pector-e -a.

2. *Into* um *in the* Genitive *but Words not increaſing have* ium, *and one-ſyllabled Words in* s *with a Conſonant, as* mons montis monte montium.

3. *Into* ĭbus *in the Dative, as* nube nubibus.

550. *R.* III. 1. e *or* i *in the* Ablative *muſt be turned into* es *in the* Nominative *and* Accuſative Plural, *but in* Neuters *into* ia, *as* igne *or* igni ignes, reti retia, felice *or* felici felices, *Neut.* felicia; *but* plus plure *or* pluri plures *and Neut.* plura *and* pluria, *and* vetus veter-i *or* -e veterа.

2. *Into* ium *in the* Genitive, *as* reti retium, felic-e *or* -i felicium, *but* vetĕr-e *or* -i *hath* vetĕrum.

3. *Into* ĭbus *in the* Dative, *as* retibus, felicibus.

IV. *The Fourth Declenſion.*

Q. *Which Words are Declined after the Fourth way?*

551. *A.* All Subſtantives in u, and many in ŭs are of the Fourth Declenſion.

Q. *How are Words in* ŭs *declined?*

552. *A.* Words in *us* have their

Nom. & *V.*	Singular in	ŭs	*Nom.* & *V.*	Plural in	ŭs	*Singular*	*N.* hic	frúctŭs	*Plural*
Gen.		ūs	*Gen.*		ŭum		*G.*	frúctūs		*N.* frúctūs
Dat.		ui	*Dat.*		ĭbus		*D.*	frúctui		*G.* frúctŭum
Acc.		ūm	*Acc.*		ūs		*Ac.*	frúctūm		*D.* frúctĭbus
Abl.		ū	*Abl.*		ĭbus		*V.* o	frúctŭs		*Ac.* frúctūs
							Ab.	frúctū		*V.* o frúctŭs
										Ab. frúctĭbus

So decline ſpĭrĭtŭs, æſtŭs, lacŭs, *and all in* ŭs *marked* (4)

Q. *How are Words in* u *declined?*

553. *A.* Words in *u* in the Singular have all their Caſes in *u*, and in the Plural have the *N. V. Ac.* in ua, *G.* in uum, *D.* and *Ab.* in ĭbus, as

Singular	*N.* hoc	cornū *an horn*	*Plural*	*N.*	córnŭa *horns*
	G.	conū *of an horn*		*G.*	córnŭum *of horns*
	D.	cornu *to an horn*		*D.*	córnĭbus *to horns*
	Ac.	cornu *an horn*		*Ac.*	córnŭa *horns*
	V. o	cornu *o horn*		*V.* o	córnŭa *of horns*
	Ab.	cornu *by an horn*		*Ab.*	córnĭbus *by horns*

So decline gĕnū *and* gĕlū.

V. *The Fifth Declenſion.*

Q. *Which Words are of the Fifth Declenſion?*

554. *A.* Res, ſpes *and* fides *faith*, and moſt Subſtantives in *ies* are of the Fifth Declenſion.

Q. *How are Words of the* Fifth *Declenſion declined in all Caſes?*

555. *A.* Words of the Fifth Declenſion have their

N.	*Singular in*	ēs	*N.*	*Plural in*	ēs	*Singular*	*N.* hæc	faci-ēs	*Plural*	*N.*	-ēs
V.		ēi	*Ac.*				*G.*	faci-ēi		*G.*	-ērum
G.		ēi	*G.*		ērum		*D.*	faci-ēi		*D.*	-ēbus
D.		ēm	*D.*		ēbus		*Ac.*	faci-ēm		*Ac.*	-ēs
Ac.		ē	*Ab.*				*V.* o	faci-ēs		*V.* o	-ēs
Ab.							*Ab.*	faci-ē		*Ab.*	-ēbus

So decline dies, ſcabies, acies, *and* rēs, ſpes, fidēs, *but theſe three make* rĕi ſpĕi, ſidĕi, *ſhort in the* Genitive *and* Dative Singular.

Q. *Now give me the Endings of every Caſe in every Declenſion.*

556. *A.* The Endings of every Caſe in every Declenſion.

		I. *Dec.*	II. *Dec.*	III. *Declenſion.*	IV. *Dec.*	V. D.
Singular	*Nom.*	ă, ās	ŭs,ĕr,ŭm	č,l,n,o,ăr,ŏr,ŭr,ŭt,ās,ĭs,ōs,&c.	ŭs, u	ēs
	Voc.	ă, ā	ĕ, ĕr, ŭm	e,l,n,o,ar,or,ur,ut,as,is,os,&c.	ŭs, u	ēs
	Gen.	æ	ī	ĭs	ūs, u	ēi
	Dat.	æ	ō	i	ŭi, u	ēi
	Acc.	ām	ŭm	ĕm *or* im	ūm, u	ēm
	Abl.	ā	ō	ĕ *or* i	u u	ē
Plural	*Nom.*	æ	ī *N.* a	ēs *N.* ă *or* ia	ūs, ua	ēs
	Voc.	æ	i *N.* a	ēs *N.* ă *or* ia	ŭs, ua	ēs
	Gen.	ārum	ōrum	um *or* ium	ŭum	ērum
	Dat.	īs	īs	ĭbus	ĭbus	ēbus
	Acc.	ās	ōs *N.* a	ēs *N.* ă *or* ia	ūs, ua	ēs
	Abl.	īs	īs	ĭbus	ĭbus	ēbus

Q. *How*

Q. *How then ſhall we know of which Declenſion any Word is?*

557. *A.* By the ending of each *Caſe*, but eſpecially by the ending of the *Genitive Singular:* thus,

Every Word that hath { æ, i, is, ūs, ēi } in the *Genit. Singular* is of the { Firſt, Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth } Declenſion.

N. B. *Now go back and tell me what Declenſion every Noun Subſtantive is of.*

Q. *Are all Nouns, Pronouns and Participles declined after one of theſe Five Declenſions?*

558. *A.* There are three Pronouns, ego, tu, ſui, otherwiſe declined: thus,

Singular	*Nom.*	ĕgo *I*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	nōs *we*
	Gen.	mĕi *of me*		*Gen.*	noſtrum *or* noſtri *of us*
	Dat.	mĭhi *to me*		*Dat.*	nōbīs *to us*
	Acc.	mē *me*		*Acc.*	nōs *us*
	Abl.	me *by me*		*Abl.*	nōbīs *by us*
Singular	*Nom.*	tu *thou* or *you*	*Plural*	*Nom.*	vōs *ye* or *you*
	Gen.	tui *of thee*		*Gen.*	vēſtrum *or* veſtri *of you*
	Dat.	tĭbi *to thee*		*Dat.*	vōbis *to you*
	Acc.	tē *thee*		*Acc.*	vōs *ye* or *you*
	Voc.	o tu *o thou*		*Voc.*	o vos *o ye*
	Abl.	tē *by thee*		*Acc.*	vōbis *by you*
Singular	*Nom.*	———	*Plural*	*Nom.*	———
	Gen.	ſui *of ones ſelf*		*Gen.*	ſui *of themſelves*
	Dat.	ſibi *to ones ſelf*		*Dat.*	ſibi *to themſelves*
	Acc.	ſe *ones ſelf*		*Acc.*	ſe *themſelves*
	Abl.	ſe *by ones ſelf*		*Abl.*	ſe *by themſelves*

559. N. B. Tot, quot, quatuor, *&c.* (*ſee numb.* 210.) *are not declined at all, and* ſatis *and* nimis, cras *and* mane *are uſed onely in the* Nom. *and* Accuſ. Singular.

§. *The Declining of Adjectives.*

Q. *Are all Adjectives declined after one of theſe five Declenſions?*

560. *A.* All Adjectives are declined after the Firſt and Second Declenſion, or after the Third.

Q. *Why are Adjectives declined?*

561. *A.* In Latin the Adjective muſt be of the ſame *Gender*, the ſame

Number, and the ſame *Caſe* that the Subſtantive is of, and ſo they muſt be turned into other endings.

1. To adſignifie their Gender, whether *Maſculine*, *Feminine* or *Neuter*.
2. To adſignifie their Number whether *Singular* or *Plural*.
3. To adſignifie their Caſe, whether *Nominative* or *Genitive*, &c.

Q. *How are Adjectives turned to adſignifie their Gender?*

562. *A.* Adjectives in

ŭs ĕr *ſome in* ĕr ĭs	} in the *Maſculine* are turned into	ă ĕra rĭs ĭs	} in the *Feminine*, and into	ŭm ĕrum ĕ ĕ	} in the *Neuter*, as

Maſc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Maſc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
bonus	bona	bonum	tener	tenĕra	tenerum
acer	acris	acre	triſtis	triſtis	triſte, *&c.*

Q. *What Adjectives are of the Firſt and Second Declenſion?*

563. *A.* Adjectives in us, a, um, and er, a, um, are of the Firſt and Second Declenſion, and be thus Declined, all three Genders together.

Adjectives of the Firſt and Second Declenſions.

I. *In* us a um.

		m.	*f.*	*n.*			*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	bonus	bona	bonum	*Plural*	*N.*	boni	bonæ	bona
	G.	boni	bonæ	boni		*G.*	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
	D.	bono	bonæ	bono		*D.*	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
	Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum		*Ac.*	bonōs	bonās	bona
	V.	bone	bona	bonum		*V.*	boni	bonæ	bona
	Ab.	bono	bona	bono		*Ab.*	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

N. B. *Where you ſee the* Maſc. *and* Neut. *are of the* Second, *and the* Fem. *of the* Firſt Decl.

So decline malus, probus, *and all in us (except* vetus) *and Participles in* us, *as* amand-us -a -um, amat-us -a -um, *but* meus mea meum *hath in the* Voc. Sing. mi mea meum, *and for* ſaturus *they uſe* ſatur -a -um.

II. *Adjectives in* ĕr ĕra ĕrum.

		m.	*f.*	*n.*			*m.*	*f*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	lĭb-ĕr	-ĕra	-ĕrum	*Plural*	*N.*	lĭb-ĕri	-ĕræ	-ĕra
	G.	-ĕri	-ĕræ	-ĕri		*G.*	-ĕrōrum	-ĕrārum	-ĕrōrum
	D.	-ĕro	-ĕræ	-ĕro		*D.*	-ĕris	-ĕris	-ĕris
	Ac.	-ĕrum	-ĕram	-ĕrum		*Ac.*	-ĕrōs	-ĕras	-ĕra
	V.	-ĕr	-ĕra	-ĕrum		*V.*	-ĕri	-ĕræ	-ĕra
	Ab.	-ĕro	-ĕra	-ĕro		*Ab.*	ĕris	-ĕris	-ĕris

So de

So decline proſper, miſer, aſper, tener, dexter, finiſter, lacer *and* cæter.
N. B. *But ſome caſt off the ſhort* e, *and make* er ra rum, ri ræ ri, *&c.*

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Sing.	*N.*	pulc-er	-ra	-rum
	G.	-ri	-ræ	-ri, *&c.*

So decline niger, ater, ruber, teter, ſacer, æger, macer, piger, glaber, creber, intĕger; *thus* niger nigra nigrum, *G.* nigri nigræ nigri, *&c.*

Q. *Are all Adjectives in* us a um *and* er a um *thus declined?*

564. *A.* There are certain Adjectives of another manner of declining in two Caſes, for they make the *Gen. Sing.* in *ius*, the *Dat.* in *i*, which be theſe *nine* that follow, ūnus, tōtus, sōlus, ullus, nullus, ălĭus, alter, uter, neuter.

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	ūn-us	-a	-um
	G.	-ius	-ius	-ius
	D.	-i	-i	-i
	Ac.	-um	-am	-um
	V.	-e	-a	-um
	Ab.	-o	-a	-o, *&c.*

So decline totus, ſolus, ullus *and* nullus; *but* alius alia aliud *a little otherwiſe: thus,*

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	ălĭ-ĭus	-ă	-ĭud
	G.	al-ius	-ius	-ius
	D.	áli-i	-i	-i
	Ac.	áli-um	-am	-ud
	V.			
	Ab.	ali-o	-a	-o, *&c.*

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	alter	álterăa	álterum
	G.	altĕr-ĭus	-ius	-ius
	D.	áltĕr-i	-i	-i
	Ac.	álter-um	-am	-um
	V.	álter	-a	-um
	Ab.	álter-o	-a	-o, *&c.*

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	uter	utra	utrum
	G.	utrius	utrius	utrius
	D.	utri	utri	utri
	Ac.	utrum	utram	utrum, *&c.*

So decline neuter.

Q. *Are there any more Adjectives beſides theſe nine ſo declined?*

565. *A. Theſe Pronouns* ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, qui, quis *and* quid *have alſo their* Genitive Singular *in* ius, *and their* Dative *in* i.

Singular	*N.*	ille	illa	illud	iſte	iſta	iſtud	ipſe	ipſa	ipſum
	G.	illius	illius	illius	iſtius	iſtius	iſtius	ipſius	ipſius	ipſius
	D.	illi	illi	illi	iſti	iſti	iſti	ipſi	ipſi	ipſi
	Ac.	illum	illam	illud	iſtum	iſtam	iſtud	ipſum	ipſam	ipſum
	V.	——	——	——	——	——	——	——	——	——
	Ab.	illo	illa	illo, *&c.*	iſto	iſta	iſto, *&c.*	ipſo, *&c.*		

Singular	N.	hīc	hæc	hŏc *this*
	G.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus
	D.	huic	huic	huic
	Ac.	hunc	hanc	hŏc
	V.	——		
	Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc

Plural	N.	hi	hæ	hæc
	G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
	D.	hīs	hīs	hīs
	Ac.	hōs	hās	hæc
	V.	——		
	Ab.	hīs	hīs	hīs

Singular	N.	ĭs	ĕa	ĭd
	G.	ējus	ējus	ējus
	D.	ĕi	ei	ei
	Ac.	eum	eam	id
	V.	——		
	Al.	eō	eā	eō

Plural	N.	ii	eæ	ea
	G.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
	D.	eis *or* iis	eis *or* iis	eis *or* iis
	Ac.	eōs	eās	ea
	V.	——		
	Ab.	eis *or* iis, &c.		

Singular	N.	īdem	eădem	ĭdem
	G.	ējuſdem	ejuſdem	ejuſdem
	D.	eīdem	eīdem	eidem
	Ac.	eundem	eandem	ĭdem
	V.	īdem	eădem	idem
	Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

Plural	N.	iīdem	eædem	eădem
	G.	eōrúndem	eārúndem	eōrúndem
	D.	eiſdem *or* iiſdem, &c.		
	Ac.	eōſdem	eāſdem	eădem
	V.	iidem	eædem	eădem
	Ab.	eiſdem *or* iiſdem, &c.		

Singular	N.	quī	quæ	quŏd
	G.	cūjus	cujus	cujus
	D.	cŭi	cui	cui
	Ac.	quem	quam	quod
	V.	——		
	Ab.	quo	qua	quo
	or	quî	quî	quî

Plural	N.	qui	quæ	quæ
	G.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	D.	quĭbus *or* quîs, &c.		
	Ac.	quōs	quās	quæ
	V.	——		
	Ab.	quĭbus	quibus	quibus
	or	quîs	quîs	quîs

So decline quidam quædam quoddam, *G.* cujuſdam, &c. *and* quis qua quod, *G.* cujus, &c. *and* quid, *G.* cujus, *D.* cui, *Ac.* quid, &c.

Q. *Are there yet no more Adjectives otherwiſe declined?*

566. *A.* There are *two* more Adjectives yet, ambo *both* and duo *two*, which becauſe they always betoken *more than one*, therefore want the *Singular* Number, and in the *Plural* are thus declined,

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Plural	N. V.	amb-o	-æ	-o
	G.	-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
	D.	-ōbus	-ābus	-ōbus
	Ac.	-ōs	-ās	-o
	Ab.	-ōbus	-ābus	-ōbus

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
ſo Plural	N. V.	dŭo	dŭæ	dŭo
	G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
	D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
	Ac.	duōs	duās	duo
	Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

Adjectives of the Third Declenſion.

Q. *Which Adjectives are of the Third Declenſion?*

567. *A.* All that are not of the Firſt and Second are of the Third, and theſe are of three ſorts.

I. *Adjectives not increaſing.*

Q. *What Adjectives do not increaſe in the* Genitive Singular?

568. *A.* Adjectives in *is is e*, and in *er ris re* do not increaſe, as

		m.	*f.*	*n.*		*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N.*	triſt-is	-is	-e	*Plural* *N.*	triſt-es	-es	-ia
	G.	-is	-is	-is	*G.*	-ium	-ium	-ium
	D.	-i	-i	-i	*D.*	-ĭbus	-ĭbus	-ĭbus
	Ac.	-em	-em	-e	*Ac.*	-ēs	-ēs	-ia
	V.	-is	-is	-e	*V.*	-es	-es	-ia
	Ab.	-i	-i	-i	*Ab.*	-ĭbus	-ĭbus	-ĭbus

So decline qualis, talis, ſimilis, utilis, *and all* Adjectives *in* is, *and* Plural N. Ac. *and* V. tres tres tria, *G.* trium, *D. and* Ab. trĭbus.

Singular	*N.*	acer	acris	acre	*Plural*	*N.*	acres	acres	acria
	G.	acris	acris	acris		*G.*	ácrium	acrium	acrium
	D.	acri	acri	acri		*D.*	ácrĭbus	acribus	acribus
	Ac.	acrem	acrem	acre		*Ac.*	acres	acres	acria
	V.	acer	acris	acre		*V.*	acres	acres	acria
	Ab.	acri	acri	acri		*Ab.*	ácrĭbus	acribus	acribus

So decline September, October, November, December, alacer, ſalŭber; *but* celer *hath* celĕris celere, *G.* celeris, *&c.*

569. II. *Adjectives increaſing long.*

		m.	*f.*	*n.*		*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N. V.*	fēlix	fēlix	fēlix	*Plural*	*N. Ac. V.*	felīces	felīces	felīcia
	G.	felīcis	felīcis	felīcis		*G.*	fēlīcium felicium, *&c.*		
	D.	felīci	felīci	felīci		*D. Ab.*	fēlīcĭbus felicibus, *&c.*		
	Ac.	felīcem	felīcem	felix					
	Ab.	felīce *or* felīci, *&c.*							

So decline velox, atrox -ōcis, cujās, noſtras, veſtras -ātis, clemens, vehemens, ſapiens, ingens, frequens -entis, ſons, inſons, *and Participles in* ans *and* ens, *as* amans, docens, legens, audiens -entis.

570. N. B.

570. N. B. Hoc plus *is a Subſtantive in the* Sing. *and an Adjective in the* Plur. *declined thus, Sing. N. Ac. V.* hoc plus, *G.* pluris, *D.* pluri, *Ab.* pluri *or* pluri. *Plur. N. Ac. V.* plures plures plura *or* pluria, *G.* plurium, *D. and Ab.* pluribus.

571. III. *Adjectives increaſing ſhort.*

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N. V.*	vĕtŭs	vetus	vetus
	G.	vĕtĕris, *&c.*		
	D.	vĕtĕri, *&c.*		
	Ac.	vĕtĕrem	vetĕrem	vĕtŭs
	Ab.	vĕtĕre *or* vetĕri, *&c.*		

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Plural	*N. Ac. V.*	vĕtĕres	vetĕres	vetĕra
	G.	vĕtĕrum, *&c.*		
	D. Ab.	vetĕribus, *&c.*		

So decline pār părĭs *and* impār impărĭs, ubĕr -is, vigil -is, cicŭr -is, impŏs impŏtis, hebĕs hebĕtis, trux trŭcis, dīvĕs dīvĭtis, paupĕr -is.

N. B. *Now turn back to the Chapter of* Adjectives, *and decline every one right.*

§. *Three Degrees of Compariſon.*

Q. *Are theſe all the ways that Adjectives are turned into other endings?*

572. *A.* Some Adjectives are yet turned into other endings in *ior* and *iſſimus*, to make compariſon between things, as that one thing is *ſuch*, another is *more ſuch*, another is *moſt ſuch*, ſo of *three* hard things, one is *hard*, another is *more hard*, a third is *hardeſt of all.*

Q. *How many Degrees of Compariſon are there?*

573. *A.* There are *three* Degrees of Compariſon; the Poſitive Degree, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

Q. *Shew me the nature of each of theſe, and how they differ?*

574. *A.* An Adjective of

1. The Poſitive Degree betokens a thing to be ſimply ſuch, as durus *hard.*
2. The Comparative betokens it to be *more* ſuch, as durior *harder* or *more hard.*
3. The Superlative betokens it to be *moſt* ſuch, as duriſſimus *hardeſt* or *moſt hard.*

N. B. *All the Adjectives that you have hitherto heard of, are of the* Poſitive *Degree, and now from it you muſt learn to form the* Comparative *and the* Superlative.

Q. *May all Adjectives form Degrees of Compariſon?*

575. *A.* No; for onely thoſe Adjectives by which we may ſay one thing is *ſuch*, another is *more ſuch*, and another is *moſt ſuch*, may form *Compariſon.*

Be

But thoſe by which we cannot ſay one is *ſuch*, another *more ſuch*, and another *moſt ſuch*, cannot form *Compariſon*, as omnis *all*, unus *one*, geminus *a twin*; for of three *ones*, we cannot ſay one is *one*, another *more* one, and another *moſt* one, *&c.*

Q. *How are the Comparative and Superlative degrees formed from the Poſitive?*

576. *A.* The Poſitive is to be declined to the *Ablative Singular*, and then the *laſt Vowel* of that *Abl.* Caſe is to be turned into

{ *ior* for the Comparative,
{ *iſſimus* for the Superlative. So

Poſitive,	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
durus *hard*, *Ab.* dur-o	dur-ior *harder*	dur-iſſimus *hardeſt*
gratus *grateful*, *Ab.* grat-o	grat-ior *gratefuller*	grat-iſſimus *gratefulleſt*
triſtis *ſad*, *Ab.* triſt-i	triſt-ior *ſadder*	triſt-iſſimus *ſaddeſt*
dulcis *ſweet*, *Ab.* dulc-i	dulc-ior *ſweeter*	dulc-iſſimus *ſweeteſt*
felix *happy*, *Ab.* felic-e	felic-ior *happier*	felic-iſſimus *happieſt*
ſapiens *wiſe*, *Ab.* ſapient-e	ſapient-ior *wiſer*	ſapient-iſſimus *wiſeſt*

Q. *Are all thus compared?*

577. *A.* No; there are *three* Exceptions.

578. I. If the Poſitive end in er the Superlative is formed from it by putting to it rĭmus, (but the Comparative is right) as

Poſ.	*Comp.*	*Superl.*			
pulcer	pulcrior	pulcérrĭmus	*fair*	*fairer*	*faireſt*
tener	tenérior	tenérrĭmus	*tender*	*tenderer*	*tendereſt*
ſalŭber	ſalúbrior	ſalubérrĭmus	*wholeſome*	*more* —	*moſt* —

Q. *Which is the ſecond Exception?*

579. *A.* II. *Five* Words ending in lis make the Superlative by changing is into limus, as

Poſ.	*Comp.*	*Superl.*			
húmĭlis	humílior	humíllĭmus	*humble*	*more* —	*moſt* —
símĭlis	ſimílior	ſimíllimus	*like*	*liker*	*likeſt*
diſsímĭlis	diſſimílior	diſſimíllimus	*unlike*	*more* —	*moſt* —
fácĭlis	facílior	facíllĭmus	*eaſy*	*eaſier*	*eaſieſt*
difficĭlis	difficílior	difficíllĭmus	*difficult*	*more* —	*moſt* —

Q. *Which is the third Exception?*

580. *A.* From the General Rule are excepted theſe that follow,

Poſ.	*Comp.*	*Superl.*			
bonus	mélior	óptĭmus	*good*	*better*	*beſt*
malus	pejor	péſsĭmus	*bad*	*worſe*	*worſt of all*
magnus	major	máxĭmus	*great*	*greater*	*greateſt*
parvus	mĭnor	mínĭmus	*little*	*leſs*	*leaſt of all*
m. multus	—	plúrĭmus	} *much*	*more*	*moſt*
f. multa	—	plurima			
n. multum	plus	plurimum			

N. B. *Now*

N. B. *Now turn again to the* Chapter *of* Adjectives, *and thus* Compare *them or take your Pen and write them down.*

Q. *How are Comparatives and Superlatives declined?*

581. *A.* I. The Comparatives are all declined in the third Declenſion, thus,

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Singular	*N. V.*	duri-or	duri-or	duri-us
	G.	-ōris	-ōris	-ōris
	D.	-ōri	-ōri	-ōri
	Ac.	-ōrem	-ōrem	-us
	Ab.	-ōre *or* ōri, *&c.*		

		m.	*f.*	*n.*
Plural	*N. Ac. V.*	-ōres	-ōres	-ōra
	G.	-ōrum	-ōrum	-ōrum
	D. Ab.	-ōribus, *&c.*		

II. Superlatives are declined like bonus, as duriſſim-us -a -um, *G.* -i -æ -i, *&c.*

CHAP. XV.

The Declining of Verbs.

Q. *THus you have learned to decline Nouns, Pronouns and Participles, now tell me, Why are Verbs declined into other endings?*

582. *A.* The Verbs ſet down in Chap. VII. ſignifie barely *To be* or *To have been*, *To doe* or *To have done*, &c.

But now they are to be declined into other endings to *adſignifie*

I. The *Mood* or manner that we uſe them in.

II. The *Time* when a thing *is*, or *does*, or *ſuffers*.

III. The *Number* of them that *be*, *doe* or *ſuffer*.

IV. The *Perſon* that *is*, *does* or *ſuffers*.

§ 1. *Three Moods.*

Q. *How many Moods or manners in which we uſe Verbs are there?*

583. *A.* Beſide the Infinite there be *Three Moods*.

I. The *Indicative Mood*, which we uſe when we *declare* that ſomething is, does or ſuffers, as cœno *I ſup*, or *I do ſup*.

II. The *Imperative Mood*, which we uſe when we *bid* ſomething to be, to doe or to ſuffer, as cœna *ſup thou*.

III. The *Subjunctive Mood*, which we uſe to *ſubjoin* to another Verb with ut *that*, ſi *if*, &c, between them, as Velle ut cœnem *to deſire that I ſup*.

N. B. *The*

N. B. *The Subjunctive Mood is sometimes Englished by* may, might, can, could, would *or* should.

N. B. *These Moods must have different endings to distinguish one from another.*

§ 2. *Twice-Three Times or Tenses.*

Q. *How many Times wherein one* is, *or* does, *or* suffers?

584. *A.* There be *Three Times* or *Tenses.*

I. The *Present* Time, that now is.

II. The *Preter* Time, that is past.

III. The *Future* Time, that is yet to come.

N. B. *So some endings are of the Present Tense, some of the Preter, and some of the Future, and these are different to distinguish one* Time *from another.*

Q. *But you said above, that there were* Twice-three *Tenses.*

585. Yes, because (as you heard Ch. VII. § 6.) some Verbs signifie *Imperfectly to be a doing,* as cœnare *to sup* or *be at supper,* and other *Perfectly to have done it,* as cœnavisse *to have supped*; therefore there are *Twice-three* Tenses, *three* of the *Imperfect,* and *three* of the *Perfect.*

1. The *Present* of the *Imperfect,* as cœno *I sup,* or am at supper now, but have not yet done it.

2. The *Preter* of the *Imperfect,* as cœnābam *I was at supper* then, but had not done it.

3. The *Future* of the *Imperfect,* as cœnābo, *I shall sup,* or shall be at supper hereafter, but not that I shall have done it.

4. The *Present* of the *Perfect,* as cœnāvi *I have supped,* and it is *now done.*

5. The *Preter* of the *Perfect,* as cœnāvĕram *I had then supped,* and it was *then done.*

6. The *Future* of the *Perfect,* as cœnāvĕro *I shall have supped,* and shall have *done* it.

N. B. 1. *The Present of the Perfect is commonly called the Preter Perfect.*

2. *And the Preter of the Perfect is commonly called the Preter-plu-perfect.*

§ 3. *Two Numbers, Singular and Plural.*

Q. *How many Numbers are there?*

586. There are *Two Numbers,* the Singular and the Plural, and so some endings of Verbs are of the Singular and some of the Plural, as *Sing.* Ego cœno *I sup, Plur.* nos cœnāmus *we sup.*

And these endings are different to distinguish the Singular from the Plural.

§ 4. *Three*

§ 4. *Three Perſons.*

Q. *How many Perſons are there?*

587. *A.* There be *three* Perſons; the Firſt, the Second and the Third.

I. The Firſt Perſon is that which ſpeaketh of it ſelf, as Ego *I*, nos *we*.

II. The Second Perſon is that which is ſpoken to, as Tu *thou*, vos *ye*.

III. The Third Perſon is that which neither ſpeaketh of it ſelf, nor is ſpoken to, but is ſpoken of, as ille *he*, illi *they*, &c.

And accordingly ſome endings of Verbs are of
The Firſt Perſon, as ego cœno *I ſup*, nos cœnāmus *we ſup*,
The Second Perſon, as tu cœnas *thou ſuppeſt*, vos cœnātis *ye ſup*,
The Third Perſon, as ille cœnat *he ſups*, illi cœnant *they ſup*.
And theſe endings muſt be different to diſtinguiſh one Perſon from the other.

Q. *Now tell me of what Perſon, of what Number, of what Tenſe, of what Mood theſe are,*

amo *I do love now*
amāmus *we do love now*
amābam *I was a loving then*
ama *love thou, by and by*
ſi amem *if I ſhould love by and by*
amāvi *I have now loved*
amāvĕro *I ſhall have loved*
amābo *I ſhall love*
narrāvi *I have told*
narro *I do tell*
narrāte *tell ye*
narrāvĕram *I had told it*
narrābo *I will tell it hereafter*
narrāmus *we do tell it now*
ut narres *that thou mayſt tell*
narrāvĕro *I ſhall have told it.*

N. B. 588. *Verbs thus confined to connote one certain Perſon, of one certain Number, of one certain time, of one certain Mood are called Verbs* Finite; *and thoſe in* Ch. VII. *are called Verbs* Infinite, *becauſe they are not ſo reſtrained and confined: ſo* cœnāre *is to ſup at large, but* cœno *not onely ſignifies to ſup, but is confined to adſignifie* 1. *that I* declare *I do ſup*, 2. *that* now *at this preſent I am ſupping*, 3. *that but* one *ſups*, 4. *that it is* I. *So* cœna *ſup thou, adſignifies*, 1. *that thou art* bidden *to ſup*, 2. *that thou art bidden to ſup* after this, 3. *that but* one *is bid*, 4. *that that one is* thou, *&c.*

§ 5. *The Conjugating of Verbs, or turning Infinite Verbs into Finite.*

Q. *As before you learned to decline a Noun in all its* Caſes, *ſo now you muſt learn to* Coniugate *or decline a Verb in all its* Perſons, *what is it then to conjugate a Verb?*

589. *A.* To

580. *A.* To *Conjugate* a Verb is to give the right ending of every Perſon in each Number, of every Tenſe of every Mood.

Q. *How ſhall that be learned?*

590. *A.* You ſhall learn now to conjugate

1. Verbs in *re* } which ſignifie Imperfectly.
2. Verbs in *i* }
3. Verbs in *iſſe* which ſignifie Perfectly.

§. *Four Conjugations of Verbs in* re.

Q. *How many ways are Verbs in* re *declined?*

591. *A.* There are *four* ways of declining Verbs in *re* which are called the *Four Conjugations*, for

Verbs in { āre are of the Firſt, ēre are of the Second, ĕre are of the Third, īre are of the Fourth } Conjugation.

Q. *What mark then hath every Conjugation to know it by?*

592. *A.* Verbs of the { Firſt Conjugation have ā long before re, as amāre. Second Conjugation have ē long before re, as docēre. Third Conjugation have ĕ ſhort before re, as legĕre. Fourth Conjugation have ī long before re, as audīre.

I. *The* First *Conjugation in* āre.

Q. *How are Verbs in* āre *declined into Finite?*

593. *A.* Verbs in āre are declined into the right ending of every Perſon in each Number, Tenſe and Mood, by changing āre into

1 P.	2 P.	3 P.	1 P.	2 P.	3 P.		
S. o	ās	āt	*P.* āmus	ātis	ānt	*in the Preſ. Imperf.*	} *Indicative.*
S. ābam	ābas	ābat	*P.* ābāmus	ābātis	ābant	*in the Pret. Imperf.*	
S. ābo	ābis	ābit	*P.* ābĭmus	ābĭtis	ābunt	*in the Fut. Imp.*	
S.—ā *or* āto		āto	*P.*—āte *or* ātōte		anto	*in the Future Imperat.*	
S. ēm	ēs	ĕt	*P.* ēmus	ētis	ent	*in the Preſ. Imperf.*	} *Subjunctive.*
S. ārem	ārēs	ārĕt	*P.* ārēmus	ārētis	ārent	*in the Pret. Imp.*	
S. ēm	ēs	ĕt	*P.* ēmus	ētis	ent	*in the Fut. Imp.*	

N. B. *The Future of the Subjunctive is ever the ſame with the Preſ. Subj.*

Q. *Give me an Example of Verbs in* āre *thus varied?*

594. *A.* Amāre *to love*, which is thus formed.

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. Tenſe S. amo amās amat *P.* amāmus amātis amant

I love thou loveſt he loveth we love ye love they love.

Pret.

Pret. Imp. S. amābam amābās amābăt *P.* amābāmus amābātis amābant
I did love or *was a loving, thou didſt,* &c.
Fut. Tenſe S. amābo amābis amābit *P.* amābĭmus amābĭtis amābunt
I ſhall love or *I will love, thou,* &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.
Fut. S.—— amā *or* amāto amāto *P.*——amāte *or* amātote amanto
love thou *let him love* *love ye* *let them love*
N. B. *In the Imperative there is no Preſ. nor Pret. becauſe we can bid only for the time to come, and there is no firſt Perſon becauſe none bids himſelf, ſaying love I, but love thou.*

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.
Preſ. S. Si amem amēs amet *P.* amēmus amētis ament
if I love if thou—if he— if we— if ye— if they love.
Pret. Imp. S. ſi amārem amāres amāret *P.* amārēmus amārētis amārent.
if I loved, if I were a loving.
Fut. S. ſi amēm amēs amĕt, *&c.* like the Preſ.
if I ſhall love.
So decline văcāre, crĕāre, formāre, mutāre, errāre, *and all in* āre.

II. *The* Second *Conjugation in* ēre.

Q. *How are Verbs in* ēre *turned into Finite?*
595. *A.* Verbs in ēre are turned into the right endings of every Perſon by changing ēre into

S. ĕo ēs ĕt *P.* ēmus ētis ent *in the Preſ.* } *Indicative.*
S. ēbam ēbas ēbat *P.* ēbāmus ēbātis ebant *in the Pret. Imperf.*
S. ēbo ēbis ēbit *P.* ēbĭmus ēbĭtis ēbunt *in the Fut.*
S.——ē *or* ēto eto *P.*——ēte *or* ētōte ento *in the Fut. of the Imperative.*
S. ĕam ĕās ĕăt *P.* ĕāmus eātis eant *in the Preſ.* } *Subjunctive.*
S. ērem ēres ēret *P.* ērēmus ērētis ērent *in the Pret. Imp.*
S. eam eās, *&c. like the Preſ.* *in the Fut.*

Q. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* ēre *thus conjugated.*
596. *A.* Docēre *to teach* is ſo formed, thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.
Preſ. S. dŏcĕo dŏcēs dŏcĕt *P.* docēmus docētis docent
I teach thou— he teaches we teach ye teach they teach.
Pret. Imp. S. docēbam docēbas docēbat *P.* docēbāmus docēbātis docēbant
I was a teaching, thou waſt, &c.
Fut. S. docēbo docēbis docēbit *P.* docēbĭmus docēbĭtis docēbunt
I will teach, thou wilt, &c.

2. In

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.— docē *or* decēto docēto *P.*— docēte *or* docētōte docento
teach thou *let him teach* *teach ye* *let them teach*

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. & Fut. S. ſi doceam doceas doceat *P.* doceamus doceatis doceant
if I teach, &c.

Pret. Imp. S. ut docērem docērēs docēret *P.* docērēmus docērētis docērent
that I might teach, &c.

So decline mānēre, cārēre, ēgēre, tēnēre, hābēre, *and all in* ēre.

III. *The* Third *Conjugation in* ĕre.

Q. *How are Verbs in* ĕre *turned into their right endings?*

597. *A.* Verbs in ĕre are turned into the right endings of every Perſon in every Number, Tenſe and Mood, by changing ĕre into

S. o ĭs it *P.* ĭmus ĭtis unt *in the Pres.*
S. ēbam ēbās ēbăt *P.* ēbāmus ēbātis ēbant *in the Pret. Imperf.* } *Indicative.*
S. am ēs ĕt *P.* ēmus ētis ent *in the Future*
S.— ĕ *or* ĭto ĭto *P.*— ĭte *or* ĭtōte unto *in the Fut. Imperat.*
S. am ās ăt *P.* āmus ātis ant *in the Pres.*
S. ĕrem ĕres ĕret *P.* ĕrēmus ĕrētis ĕrent *in the Pret. Imp.* } *Subjunctive.*
S. am ās, *&c.* *in the Fut.*

Q. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* ĕre *thus conjugated.*

598. *A.* Legĕre *to reade* is ſo formed, thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Pres. S. lĕgo legĭs legĭt *P.* legĭmus legĭtis legunt
I do reade or *I am a reading, thou doſt reade,* &c.

Pret. Imp. S. legēbam legēbas legēbat *P.* legēbāmus legēbātis legēbant
I read, I did reade, I was a reading, &c.

Fut. S. legam leges leget *P.* legēmus legētis legent
I will reade, I ſhall be a reading.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.— legĕ *or* legĭto legito *P.*— legĭte *or* legĭtōte legunto
reade thou *ſee he reade* *reade ye* *ſee they reade.*

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. & Fut. S. ut legam legas legat *P.* legāmus legātis legant
o that I may reade, o that thou, &c.

Pret. Imp. S. cum legĕrem cum legĕres cum legĕret *P.* cum legerēmus, *&c.*
when I was a reading, when thou waſt, &c. *when we read,* &c.

So decline creſcĕre, agĕre, gerĕre, fingĕre, *and others in* ĕre.

Q. *Are all Verbs in* ĕre *thus declined in all Perſons?*

599. *A.* No, for there are three Exceptions.

Q. *Which is the first Exception in the third Conjugation?*

600. *A.* Exc. I. Fer're (*for* ferĕre) *to bear* in ſome Perſons loſes a Letter thus.

N. B. *And do you tell me what Letter it is, and where, and which Perſons are right.*

Indic. { *Preſ. S.* fero fer's fer't *P.* ferĭmus fer'tis ferunt. *I bear, thou, &c.*
Pret. Imp. S. ferēbam -bas -bat *P.* -bāmus -bātis -bant. *I bore, thou, &c.*
Fut. S. feram feres feret *P.* ferēmus ferētis ferent. *I will bear, &c.*

Imperat. S.—fer' *or* fer'to fer'to *P.*—fer'te *or* fer'tōte ferunto. *Bear thou, &c.*

Subjunct. { *Preſ. S.* ſi feram feras ferat *P.* ferāmus ferātis ferant. *If I bear, &c.*
Pret. Imp. S. cum fer'rem -res -ret. *P.* -rēmus -rētis -rent. *When I bore, &c.*

Q. *Which is the ſecond Exception in the third Conjugation?*

601. *A.* Exc. II. As fer is uſed for fere, ſo inſtead of dīce, dūce, fāc in the ſecond Perſon Singular of the Imperat. they uſe dīc, dūc, fāc, caſting off the ĕ.

Q. *Which is the third Exception?*

602. *A.* Exc. III. For volĕre they uſe velle *to will, to be willing, to deſire* and it hath two Compounds.

{Nolle (*from* non *and* velle) *to be unwilling, to nill, to refuſe.*
{Malle (*from* magis *and* velle) *to be more willing, to have rather, to chuſe.*

And theſe three are declined wrong in four Tenſes, but in the reſt right thus:

Indicative

Preſ. Sing.	vŏlo	vīs	vult	*Pl.* volŭmus	vultis	volunt
	I will	*thou wilt*	*he will*	*we will*	*ye will*	*they will*
	nōlo	nonvis	nonvult	*Pl.* nōlŭmus	nonvultis	nolunt
	mālo	māvis	mavult	*Pl.* mālŭmus	mavultis	malunt

Pret. volebam volebas volebat, &c. *I was willing*

Imp. Sing. nolebam nolebas, &c. *I was unwilling*
malebam malebas, &c. *I was rather willing*

Fut. Sing. volam voles volet. *P.* volēmus volētis volent. *I ſhall be willing*
nolam noles, &c.
malam males, &c.

Imperative. velle *and* malle *have no Imperative.*
{noli *or* nolīto *refuſe thou, don't thou.* *P.* nolīte *or* nolitōte *don't ye.*

Subjunctive

Preſ. S. ſi	velim	velīs	velīt	*P.* velīmus	velītis	velint *if I be willing, &c.*
	nolim	nolīs	nolīt	*P.* nolīmus	nolītis	nolint *if I refuſe, &c.*
	malim	malīs	malīt	*P.* malīmus	malītis	malint *if I ſhould chuſe, &c.*
Pret.	vellem	vellēs	vellet	*P.* vell-ēmus	-ētis	-ent *if I were willing, &c.*
Imp. S. ſi	nollem	noll-ēs	-et	*P.* -ēmus	-ētis	-ent *if I would not, &c.*
	mallem	mallēs	mallet	*P.* -ēmus	-ētis	-ent *if I had rather, &c.*

IV. *The* Fourth *Conjugation in* īre.

Q. *How are Verbs in* īre *conjugated in every Perſon?*

603. *A.* Verbs in īre are turned into the right endings of every Perſon by changing īre into

S. īo īs it *P.* īmus ītis iunt *in the Preſ.* } *Indicative.*
S. iēbam iēbas iēbat *P.* iēbāmus iēbātis iēbant *in the Pret. Imp.*
S. iam iēs iet *P.* iēmus iētis ient *in the Fut.*
S.— ī *or* īto īto *P.*— īte *or* ītōte iunto *in the Future Imperative.*
S. iam iās iat *P.* iāmus iātis iant *in the Preſ.* } *Subjunctive.*
S. irem īres īret *P.* īrēmus īrētis īrent *in the Pret. Imp.*
S. iam iās iāt, *&c. as in the Preſ.* *in the Future*

Q. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* īre *ſo declined.*

604. *A.* Audīre *to hear* is ſo declined, thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. aúdĭo audīs audīt *P.* audīmus audītis audiunt
I do hear thou doſt— he— we do hear ye— they do hear
Pret. Imp. S. audiēbam audiēbas audiēbat *P.* audiēbāmus audiēbātis audiēbant
I heard, I was a hearing, &c.
Fut. S. audiam audiēs audiet *P.* audiēmus audiētis audient
I ſhall or will hear, thou ſhalt, &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.—audī *or* audīto audīto *P.*—audīte *or* audītōte audiunto
hear thou let him hear hear ye let them hear.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & Fut. } *S.* ſi audiam ſi audiās ſi audiāt *P.* ſi audiāmus -ātis -ant
if I ſhould hear, if thou ſhouldeſt hear, &c.
Pret. Imp. } *S.* cum audīrem audīres audīret *P.* audīrēmus audīrētis audīrent
when I heard or *was a hearing, when thou,* &c.

So decline finire, venire, ſalire, fulcire, ſarcire, *and the reſt in* īre.

Q. *Are all Verbs of the* Fourth *Conjugation thus declined?*

605. *A.* No, there are *two Exceptions*: for,

606. Exc. 1. *Inſtead of* fire *they uſe* fĭĕri *to become, which in the* Preter Imp. Subj. *hath* fĭĕrem, *elſewhere it is declined right.*

607. II. Ire *to go, and* quire *to be able, are in ſome places wrong, thus.*

Indicat. { *Preſ. S.* eo is it *P.* īmus ītis eunt. *I go, thou goeſt, he goes,* &c.
Pret. Imp. S. ibam ibas ibat *P.* ibāmus ibātis ibant *I was a going,* &c.
Fut. S. ibo ibis ibit *P.* ibimus ibitis ibunt. *I will go,* &c.
Imperat. S.—ī *or* īto īto *P.*—īte *or* ītōte eunto. *Go thou,* &c.
Subjunct. { *Preſ. & Fut. S.* ſi eam eas eat *P.* eāmus eātis eant. *If I would go,* &c.
Pret. Imp. S. ſi irem ires iret *P.* irēmus irētis irent. *If I went,* &c.

So decline quire.

N. B. *The Participles are* iens, *G.* euntis, *and* eundus *for* iendus.

Q. *Thou you have ſeen the Four Conjugations or ways of Declining Verbs in* re, *now tell me, are there no Verbs in* re *but what are declined after one of the* four *ways?*

607. *A.* There are *twelve* Verbs that are of *two* Conjugations.

§. *Twelve Verbs partly of the* III. *and partly of the* IV. *Conjugation.*

Q. *Which are thoſe* twelve?

608. *A.* Theſe *twelve* făcĕre, jăcĕre, lăcĕre, ſpĕcĕre, fŏdĕre, fŭgĕre, capĕre, răpĕre, săpĕre, cŭpĕre, părĕre, quătĕre, take in an *i* in moſt places, and ſo are partly of the third Conjugation, and partly of the fourth, and are declined thus by changing ĕre into

S. ĭo	4	ĭs	3	it	3	*P.* ĭmus	3	ĭtis 3	iunt 4	*in the Preſ.* } *Indicative*
S. iēbam	iēbas	iēbat				*P.* iēbāmus	iēbātis	iēbant 4	*in Pret. Imp.* }
S. ĭam	ĭēs	ĭĕt				*P.* iēmus	iētis	ient 4	*in the Fut.* }
S.—ĕ *or* ĭto	3	ĭto	3			*P.*—ĭte *or* ĭtōte	3	iunto 4	*in the Imperative*
S. ĭam	ias	iat				*P.* iāmus	iātis	iant 4	*in the Preſ.* } *Subjunctive*
S. ĕrem	ĕres	ĕret				*P.* ĕrēmus	ĕrētis	erent 3	*in Pret. Imp.* }
S. ĭam	iās	iat				*P.* iāmus	iātis	iant 4	*in the Fut.* }

So făcĕre *to doe* is formed thus.

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. facio facis facit *P.* facĭmus facĭtis faciunt
I do thou doeſt he does we do ye do they do.
Pret. Imp. S. faciēbam faciēbas, &c. *I was a doing, thou waſt,* &c.
Fut. S. faciam facies faciet *P.* faciēmus, &c. *I will do,* &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.—face *or* făc *or* facĭto facĭto *P.* facĭte *or* facĭtōte faciunto. *Do thou,* &c.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. and Fut. S. cum faciam facias faciat *P.* faciāmus, &c. *When I ſhall do,* &c.
Pret. Imp. cum facĕrem facĕres facĕret *P.* facerēmus, &c. *When I was doing,* &c.

So decline the other eleven, and all their Compounds, and theſe have the Participles in iens, *as* faciens, jaciens, capiens, &c.

§. *Four Conjugations of Verbs in* i.

Q. *Thus for Verbs in* re, *now how many ways are Verbs in* i *Conjugated?*

609. *A.* There are alſo *four* Conjugations of Verbs in *i* for

Verbs in { āri are of the Firſt / ēri are of the Second / i are of the Third / īri are of the Fourth } Conjugation.

Q. *Wha*

Q. *What mark is there to know Verbs of one Conjugation from Verbs of another?*

610. *A.* Verbs of the { First Conjugation have ā long before ri, as amāri. Second Conjugation have ē long before ri, as docēri. Third Conjugation have ĭ and not ĕri, as legi. Fourth Conjugation have ī long before ri, as audīri.

Q. *Whence are the Perſons of Verbs in* ĭ *formed?*

611. *A.* The Perſons of Verbs in *i* are formed from the ſame Perſons of the Verb in *re*, by theſe four Rules.

1. *Where they have* o *theſe have* or, *as* amo amŏr, amābo amābor, amato amator, amanto amantor, capiunto capiuntor, facito facitor.

2. *Where they have* m *theſe have* r, *as* amabam amabar, amem amer, amarem amarer, faciam faciar, audiebam audiebar, legam legar.

3. *Where they have* t *theſe have* tur, *as* amat amātur, amant amantur.

4. *To the* ſecond Sing. *of their* Imperative *theſe put* re, *as* amā amāre, docē docēre, legĕ legĕre, audī audīre, *as you ſhall ſee all along.*

I. *The* First *Conjugation in* āri.

Q. *How are Verbs in* āri *made Finite, and turned into the right endings?*

612. *A.* Verbs in āri are declined into the right endings of every Perſon in each Number, of every Tenſe, and every Mood, by changing āri into

1 P.	2 P.	3 P.	1 P.	2 P.	3 P.	
S. ŏr	āris *or* āre	ātur	*P.* āmur	āmĭni	antur	*Preſ.*
S. ābar	ābāris *or* ābāre	ābātur	*P.* ābāmur	ābāmĭni	ābantur	*Pret. Imp.*
S. ābŏr	ābĕris *or* ābĕre	ābĭtur	*P.* ābĭmur	ābĭmĭni	ābuntur	*Fut.*
S. ——	āre *or* ātor	ātor	*P.* ——	āmĭni *or* āmĭnor	antor	*in Imper.*
S. ĕr	ēris *or* ēre	ētur	*P.* ēmur	ēmĭni	entur	*Preſ.*
S. ārer	ārēris *or* ārēre	ārētur	*P.* ārēmur	ārēmĭni	ārentur	*Pret. Imp.*
S. ĕr	ēris *or* ēre	ētur	*P.* ēmur	ēmĭni	entur	*Fut.*

Indicat. *Subj.*

Q. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* āri *ſo declined?*

613. *A.* Amāri *to be loved* is ſo declined, thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. amŏr amāris *or* amāre amātur *P.* amāmur amāmĭni amantur
I am loved thou art loved he is loved we are—— ye are—— they are——
Pret. Imp. S. amābăr amab-āris *or* -āre ātur *P.* -āmur -āmini -antur
I was loved thou waſt loved he was—— we—— ye—— they——
Fut. S. amāb-ŏr -ĕris *or* ĕre -ĭtur *P.* -ĭmur -ĭmini -untur
I ſhall be loved, thou ſhalt, &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S. ——amāre *or* amātor amātor *P.* —— amāmĭni *or* amāmĭnor amantor
be thou loved let him be loved be ye loved let them be——

Subj.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. & Fut. S. si amer amēris *or* amēre amētur P. amēmur amēmĭni amentur
if I be loved, if thou, &c.

Pret. Imp. S. cum amār-er -ēris *or* -ēre -etur P. -emur -emini -entur
when I was loved, when thou, &c.

So decline creāri, formāri, damnāri, *and all* Paſſives *in* āri.

614. *And ſo decline* Deponents *in* āri, *and Engliſh them* Actively.

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Pres. S. con-or -āris *or* āre ātur P. -āmur -āmĭni -antur
I endeavour, thou endeavoureſt, &c.

Pret. Imp. con-ābar -abāris *or* -abāre -abātur P. -ābāmur -ābāmini -abantur
I did endeavour, I endeavoured, or was endeavouring, thou, &c.

Fut. con-ābor -abĕris *or* -abĕre -abĭtur P. -abĭmŭr -abĭmĭni -abuntur
I ſhall endeavour or *I will endeavour, thou wilt,* &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.—— conāre *or* conātor conātor P.—— conāmĭni *or* conāmĭnor conantor
endeavour thou, &c.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. S. ſi coner conēris *or* conĕre conĕtur P. conēmur conēmĭni conentur
if I ſhould endeavour, if thou, &c.

Pret. Imp. S. ſi con-ārer -arēris *or* arēre arētur P. arēmur arēmĭni arentur
if I endeavoured, if thou, &c.

II. *The* Second *Conjugation in* ēri.

Q. *How are Verbs in* ēri *Conjugated aright?*

615. *A.* Verbs in ēri are turned into the right ending of each Perſon thus by changing ēri into

S.	ĕŏr	ēris	*or* ēre	ētur	P.	ēmur	ēmĭni	entur	*in the Pref.*
S.	ēbăr	ēbāris	*or* ēbāre	ēbātur	P.	ēbāmur	ēbāmini	ēbantur	*Pret. Imp.*
S.	ēbŏr	ebĕris	*or* ebĕre	ēbĭtur	P.	ēbĭmur	ēbĭmĭni	ēbuntur	*in the Fut.*
S.	—	ēre	*or* ētor	ētor	P.	—ēmĭni	*or* ēmĭnor	entor	*in the Imperat.*
S.	ĕăr	eāris	*or* eāre	eātur	P.	eāmur	eāmĭni	eantur	*in the Pref.*
S.	ērer	ērēris	*or* ērēre	ērētur	P.	ērēmur	ērēmĭni	ērentur	*Pret. Imp.*
S.	ear	cāris	*or* cāre,	*like the Pref.*					*in the Fut.*

Subjunct.

Q. *Give me an* Exemple *of a Verb in* ēri *ſo declined.*

616. *A.* Docēri *to be taught* is ſo Conjugated, as thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Pres. S. dŏcĕŏr docēris *or* docēre docētur P. docēmur docēmĭni dŏcentur
I am taught, i. e. *now a teaching, thou art,* &c.

Pret. Imp.

Pret. } *S.* docēb-ar -āris *or* -āre -ātur *P.* -āmur -āmĭni -antur
Imp. } *I was taught* or *a teaching, thou waſt a teaching,* &c.
Fut. S. docēb-or -ĕris *or* -ĕre -ĭtur *P.* -ĭmur -ĭmini -untur
I ſhall be taught, thou ſhalt, &c.

2. In the Imperative.

S.— docĕre *or* docētor docĕtor *P.*— docēmĭni *or* docēmĭnor docentor
be thou taught let him be taught be ye taught let them be—

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & *Fut.* } *S.* ut docē-ar -āris *or* āre -ātur *P.* -āmur -āmĭni -antur
that I may be taught, that thou—*that he*—,&c.
Pret. Imp. } *S.* cum docērer cum docērēris *or* docērēre cum docērētur, &c.
while I was a teaching, while thou wert, &c. i. e. *in being taught.*

So decline tenēri, habēri, monēri, *and other* Paſſives *in* ēri, *and ſo Engliſh them.*

617. *And ſo decline* Deponents *in* ēri, *but Engliſh them* Actively, verēri *to dread,* tuēri *to behold,* rēri *to think*, &c.

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. verĕŏr verēr-is *or* -e verētur *P.* ver-ēmur -ēmini -entur
I dread thou dreadeſt he dreads we dread ye dread they dread.
Pret. Imp. S. verēbar verēbāris *or* verēbāre, &c. *I dreaded,* &c.
Fut. S. verĕbor verēbĕris *or* verēbĕre verēbĭtur, &c, *I will dread,* &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.— verēre *or* verētor verĕtor *P.*— verēmĭni *or* verēmĭnor verentor
dread thou let him dread do ye dread let them—

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & *Fut.* } *S.* ut verĕ-ăr -āris *or* -āre -ātur *P.* -āmur -āmĭni -antur
that I might dread, that thou, &c.
Pret. Imp. } *S.* cum verē-rer -rēris *or* -rēre -rētur *P.* -rēmur -rēmĭni -rentur
when I dreaded, when thou, &c.

III. *The* Third *Conjugation in* i.

Q. *How are Verbs in* i *of the Third Conjugation Declined?*

618. *A.* Verbs in *i* of the third Conjugation are turned into their right Perſons by changing *i* into

S. ŏr	ĕris	*or* ĕre	ĭtur	*P.* ĭmur	ĭmĭni	untur	*in the Preſ.* } *Indicat.*
S. ēbar	ēbāris	*or* ēbāre	ēbātur	*P.* ēbāmur	ēbāmini	ēbantur	*Pret. Imp.*
S. ar	ēris	*or* ēre	ētur	*P.* ēmur	ēmĭni	entur	*in the Fut.*
S.—	ĕre	*or* ĭtor	ĭtor	*P.*—	ĭmĭni *or* ĭmĭnor	untor	*in the Imperat.*
S. ar	āris	*or* āre	ātur	*P.* āmur	āmĭni	antur	*in the Preſ.* } *Subj.*
S. ĕrer	ĕrēris	*or* ĕrēre	ĕrētur	*P.* ĕrēmur	ĕrēmini	ĕrentur	*Pret. Imp.*
S. ar	āris	*or* āre	ātur	*P.* āmur	āmĭni	antur	*in the Fut.*

Q. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* ĭ *ſo declined?*

619. *A.* Legi *to be read* is ſo conjugated, as thus.

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. legor legĕris *or* legĕre legĭtur *P.* legĭmur legĭmĭni leguntur
I am read or *I am now a reading, thou art,* &c.

Pret. Imp. S. legēbar legēbāris *or* legēbāre legēbātur *P.* legēbāmur, &c.
I was read or *I was a reading,* i. e. *in being read.*

Fut. S. legar legēris *or* legēre legētur *P.* legēmur legēmĭni legentur
I ſhall be read, thou ſhalt, &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.—— legĕre *or* legĭtor legĭtor *P.*—— legĭmĭni *or* legĭmĭnor leguntor
be thou read *let him be read* *be ye read* *let them be read*

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & Fut. *S.* ſi legar legāris *or* legāre legātur *P.* legāmur legāmĭni legantur
if I be read, if thou beeſt, &c.

Pret. Imp. S. cum legĕrer legĕrēris *or* legĕrēre legĕrētur *P.* legĕrēmur, &c.
when I was read or *a reading,* i. e. *in being read*

So decline emi, vendi, agi, fundi, *and all* Paſſives *in* ĭ.

620. *And ſo decline the* Deponents *in* ĭ, *but Engliſh them* Actively, *as* fungi *to diſcharge,* frui *to enjoy,* uti *to uſe,* &c. *thus:*

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Preſ. S. ūtor ūtĕris *or* ūtĕre ūtĭtur *P.* ūtĭmur ūtĭmĭni ūtuntur
I uſe or *make uſe of, thou uſeſt, he uſeth,* &c.

Pret. Imp. S. utēbar utēbāris *or* utēbāre utēbātur *P.* utēbāmur, &c.
I uſed, I was uſing, thou, &c.

Fut. S. utar utēris *or* utēre utētur *P.* utēmur utēmini utentur
I ſhall or *will uſe, thou,* &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.—— utĕre *or* ūtĭtor utĭtor *P.*—— utĭmini *or* utĭminor utuntor
uſe thou, do thou make uſe of, &c.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Preſ. & Fut. *S.* ſi utar ſi utāris *or* utāre ſi utātur *P.* ſi utāmur, &c.
if I ſhould uſe, if thou, &c.

Pret. Imp. S. cum utĕrer cum utĕrēris *or* utĕrēre cum utĕrētur, &c.
when I uſed, when thou, &c.

Q. *Are all Verbs in* ĭ *of the Third Conjugation thus declined?*

621. *A.* There is one Verb ferri *to be born,* that loſes a Letter in ſome Perſons, as

Indic. *Preſ. S.* feror fer'ris *or* fer're fer'tur *P.* ferĭmur ferĭmĭni feruntur
Pret. Imp. S. ferēbar ferēbāris *or* ferēbāre ferēbātur, &c.
Fut. S. ferar ferēris *or* ferēre ferētur *P.* ferēmur, &c.

Imp. Fut. S.—— fer're *or* fer'tor fer'tor *P.*—— ferĭmĭni *or* ferĭmĭnor feruntor

Subj. Preſ. & Fut. S. ſi ferar ferāris *or* ferāre ferātur *P.* ferāmur, &c.

Subj. Pret. Imp. S. ſi fer'rer fer'rēris *or* fer'rēre fer'rētur, &c.

IV. The

IV. *The* Fourth *Conjugation in* īri.

Q. *How are Verbs of the* Fourth Conjugation *in* īri *declined*;

622. *A.* Verbs in īri are turned into the right endings of every Perſon by changing īri into

S. ĭor	īris	*or* īre	ītur	*P.* īmur	īmĭni	iuntur	*in Pref.*	*Indic.*
S. iēbar	iēbāris *or* iēbāre	iēbātur	*P.* iēbām-ur	-mĭni	-ntur	*in Pret.*		
S. iar	iēris *or* iēre	iētur	*P.* iēmur	iēmĭni	ientur	*in Fut.*		
S. —	īre	*or* ītor	ītor	*P.* —	īmĭni *or* īmĭnor	iuntor	*in the Imper.*	
S. iar	iāris *or* iāre	iātur	*P.* iāmur	iāmĭni	iantur	*in Pref.*	*Subj.*	
S. īrer	īrēris *or* īrēre	īrētur	*P.* īrēmur	īrēmĭni	īrentur	*Pr. Im.*		
S. iar	iāris, &c.					*in Fut.*		

Q. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* īri *ſo declined.*

623. *A.* Audīri *to be heard* is ſo formed, as thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Pref. S. audĭŏr audīris *or* audīre audītur *P.* audīmur audīmĭni audĭuntur
I am heard thou art heard he is heard we are— ye are— they are—

Pret. Imp. *S.* audiēb-ar -āris *or* -āre -ātur *P.* -āmur -āmĭni -antur
I was heard, i. e. *in being heard, thou waſt heard,* &c.

Fut. S. audiar audiēr-is *or* -e audiētur *P.* audiēmur audiēmĭni audientur
I ſhall be heard, thou ſhalt, &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S. — audīre *or* audītor audītor *P.* audīmĭni *or* audīmĭnor audiuntor
be thou heard, let him, &c.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Pref. & Fut. *S.* ſi audiar audiāris *or* audiāre audiātur *P.* audiāmur, &c.
if I be heard, if thou, &c.

Pret. Imp. *S.* ſi audirer audīrēris *or* audirēre audirētur, &c.
if I were heard, &c.

So decline ſiniri, puniri, hauriri, *and all* Paſſives *in* īri.

624. *And ſo decline* Deponents *in* īri, *but Engliſh them* Actively, *as* metīri *to meaſure,* mentīri *to lie,* ordīri *to begin,* &c.

Indic. Pref. S. mentior mentīris *or* mentīre, &c. *I do lie.*
Indic. Pret. Imp. S. mentiēbar, &c. *I did lie, I was telling a lie.*
Indic. Fut. S. mentiar mentiēris *or,* &c. *I ſhall lie.*
Imperat. S. — mentīre *or* mentītor, &c. *lie thou, do thou* —
Sub. Pref. & Fut. S. ſi mentiar mentiāris *or,* &c. *if I ſhould lie.*
Subj. Pret. Imp. S. cum mentīrer cum mentirēris, &c. *when I lied.*

Q. *Thus you have learned to Conjugate Verbs in* ī *in their Four Conjugations, but I would know whether all Verbs in* ī *are declined after one of theſe* Four *Conjugations?*

625. *A.* No, for there are two ſorts that are of two Conjugations.

Fifteen

Fifteen Verbs in i *partly of the Third and partly of the Fourth.*

Q. *Which is the firſt ſort?*

626. *A. There are* 15 *Verbs in* i, grădi, mŏri, păti, *and the* Paſſives *of thoſe* 12 *ſet down numb.* 608. *that ſhould be of the* third Conjugation, *but in ſome places they take in an* i, *and are of the* fourth, *thus:*

S. ĭor 4	ĕris *or* ĕre 3	ĭtur 3	*P.* ĭmur 3	ĭmini 3	iuntur 4.	*Pref.*
S. iēbăr	iēbāris *or* iēbāre	iēbātur	*P.* iēbāmur	iēbāmĭni	iēbantur	*Pret.*
S. iar	iēris *or* iēre	iētur	*P.* iēmur, &c. 4.			*in the Fut.*
S. ——	ĕre *or* ĭtor	ĭtor 3	*P.* —ĭmĭni *or* ĭmĭnor 3		iuntor 4	*in Impe.*
S. iar	iāris *or* iāre	iātur	*P.* iāmur, &c. 4			*in the Pref.*
S. ĕrer	ĕrēris *or* ĕrēre	ĕrētur	*P.* ĕrēmur, &c. 3.			*in the Pret.*

Indic. Subj.

N. B. *And theſe make their* Participles *in* iens *and* iendus 4 *as* gradiens *going*, moriens *dying*, capiendus *to be taken*, &c.

Q. *Which is the ſecond ſort?*

627. *A.* Orĭri *and* pŏtiri *ſhould be of the* fourth Conjugation *onely, but they are declined partly in the* third *and partly in the* fourth, *as thoſe before,* orior orĕris *or* orĕre orĭtur, potĕrer potĕrēris, &c.

§. *The Declining of Verbs in* iſſe.

Q. *Having Conjugated Verbs in* re *and* i, *that all ſignifie* Imperfectly, *now tell how are Verbs in* iſſe *that ſignifie* Perfectly *Conjugated?*

628. *A.* Infinite Verbs in *iſſe* are made Finite thus, by changing *iſſe* into

S. ī	iſti	ĭt	*P.* ĭmus	iſtis	ērunt *or* ēre	*in the Pret. Perf.*
S. ĕram	ĕrās	ĕrat	*P.* ĕrāmus	ĕrātis	ĕrant	*in the Preterpluperf.*
S. ĕro	ĕris	ĕrit	*P.* ĕrĭmus	ĕrĭtis	ĕrint	*in the Fut. Perf.*

Indic.

N. B. *Verbs in* iſſe *have no* Imperative, *for you can't* command *a thing to* have done.

S. ĕrim	ĕris	ĕrit	*P.* ĕrĭmus	ĕrĭtis	ĕrint	*in the Pret. Perf.*
S. iſſem	iſſēs	iſſet	*P.* iſſēmus	iſſētis	iſſent	*in Pret. pluperf.*
S. ĕro	ĕris	ĕrit	*P.* ĕrĭmus	ĕrĭtis	ĕrint	*in Fut. Perf.*

Subj.

N. B. *The* Fut. Perfect Subj. *is the ſame with the* Fut. Perf. Indic.

Q. *Give me an* Example *of a Verb in* iſſe *ſo declined,*

629. *A.* Lēgiſſe *to have read*, is ſo declined, as thus:

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Pret. Perf. S. lēgi lēgiſti lēgit *P.* lēgĭmus lēgiſtis legērunt *or* legēre
I have read thou haſt read, &c.

Preter pluperf. S. lēgĕram lēgĕras lēgĕrat *P.* legĕr-āmus -ātis -ant
I had then read thou hadſt read, &c.

Fut. Perf. S. legĕro legĕris legĕrit *P.* legĕrĭmus legĕrĭtis legĕrint
I ſhall have read thou ſhalt have read, &c.

2. I

2. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Pret. } *S.* ſi lēgĕrim legĕris legerit *P.* legĕrĭmus legĕrĭtis legerint
Perf. } *If I have read if thou*, &c.

Preter } *S.* cum legiſſem legiſſ-es -et *P.* -ēmus -ētis ent
pluperf. } *when I had read when thou*, &c.

Fut. } *S.* cum legĕro legĕris legĕrit *P.* legĕr-ĭmus -ĭtis -int
Perf. } *when I ſhall have read, and done it.*

So decline amaviſſe, amavi amaviſti, &c. amaver-am -as -at, &c. docuiſſe, docui docuiſti, &c. docueram, &c. docuero, &c. docuerim, &c. audiv-iſſe, -i -iſti, &c. -ĕram, &c. -ĕro, &c. -ĕrim, &c. -iſſem, &c. and all Verbs Infinite in *iſſe*.

630. N. B. Cœpiſſe, odiſſe *and* meminiſſe, *having no* Imperfects, *are onely declined thus, but* memento *remember thou, and* mementōte *remember ye, is uſed in the* Imperative.

The Declining Eſſe *and* Poſſe.

Q. *Have we now done with Conjugating Verbs and learn'd all?*

631. *A.* There remains yet *one* Verb Eſſe and its Compounds poteſſe *or* poſſe (from potis *able* and eſſe *to be*) *&c.* which are declined in a way by themſelves thus,

From eſſe *to be* and poſſe *to be able* are formed

1. In the Indicative Mood.

Pref. S. Sum ĕs eſt *P.* sŭmus eſtis ſunt
I am thou art he is we are ye are they are.

So poſſum potĕs poteſt *P.* poſsŭmus poteſtis poſſunt *I am able*, &c.

Pret. } *S.* ĕram ĕras ĕrat *P.* erāmus erātis erant
Imp. } *I was thou waſt he was we were ye were they were*

ſo potĕram potĕras potĕrat *P.* potĕrāmus, &c. *I was able*, &c.

Fut. S. ĕro ĕris ĕrit *P.* ĕrĭmus ĕrĭtis ĕrunt
I ſhall be thou— he— we ſhall be ye— they—

ſo potĕro potĕris potĕrit *P.* potĕr-ĭmus -ĭtis -unt *I ſhall be able*, &c.

2. In the Imperative Mood.

S.— ĕs *or* eſto eſto *P.*— eſte *or* eſtōte ſunto
be thou let him be be ye let them be,

N. B. Poſſe *hath no* Imperat. *for we don't uſe to bid one* be able.

3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

Pref. & Fut. } *S.* ſi ſim ſi sīs ſi sĭt *P.* ſi sīmus ſi sītis ſi ſint
if I may be if thou— &c.

ſo ſi poſſ-im -īs -it *P.* -īmus -ītis -int *if I be able*, &c.

Pret. } *S.* ſi eſſem ſi eſſēs ſi eſſet *P.* ſi eſſēmus ſi eſſētis ſi eſſent
Imp. } *if I were if thou wert*, &c.

ſo ſi

ſo ſi poſſem poſsēs poſsĕt *P.* poſsēmus poſsētis poſsent *if I were able*, &c. And thus you have learned to decline all declinable Words.

N. B. *In theſe things the Learner muſt be ſo long exerciſed by daily repetition, examination*, &c. *till he can without heſitation give any Word in any Caſe, Perſon, Tenſe*, &c. *that you ſhall call for in an hundred inſtances, and then let him proceed to* Sentences, *and he will preſently do them to admiration.*

CHAP. XVI.

Of Sentences and Phraſes.

Q. NOW *that you have learned the Eight ſorts of Words, and how to decline* Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs *and* Participles, *tell me what is to be done with theſe* Words?

632. *A.* The uſe of Words is to make Sayings or **Sentences.**

Q. *What is a* Saying *or* Sentence?

633. *A.* A Sentence is ſo many Words as expreſs our meaning ſo, that he that hears it can underſtand our mind thereby.

Q. *How many Words go to the making of a Sentence?*

634. *A.* 1. Sometimes *one* Word makes a Sentence, as *Ah! Alas! Fie!*

2. Sometimes *two* as, *Maſters teach. Boys learn. Time haſtens.*

3. Some Sentences are made of *three* Words as, *Life is ſhort. Death will come.*

4. Some of *four* as, *Goodneſs alone giveth honour. Diligence makes the Scholar. Good Children are dutifull.*

5. Sometimes *five* Words make a Sentence as, *Idleneſs keeps fools in ignorance. Bad Teachers make bad Scholars.*

6. Sometimes *ſix*, ſometimes *ſeven*, ſometimes *eight*, ſometimes *nine*, &c.

Q. *If there be but* one *Word in a ſaying, What Word is that?*

635. *A.* If there be but *one* Word in a Sentence it is an *Interjection*, for no other Word but *it* can *alone* expreſs the meaning of ones mind.

Thus when we would expreſs that we
would have one attend, we ſay O! *or* Eho! *or* Heus! *O! Ho! Soho!*
do attend, we ſay Hem! *Ha! Anon!*
would have one come to us, we ſay Ehodum! *or* Heus! *Soho!*
would have a thing taken out of our ſight, we ſay Apăge! *Out! Away!*
would have ſilence made, we ſay St! *or* Au! *Whiſt! Huſh! Peace!*
would have one not ſo eager, we ſay Eia! *Stay! Fair and ſoft!*
would ſhew ſomething to be obſerved, we ſay En! *or* Ecce! *Lo! Behold!*
are ſurprized with wonder, we ſay Vah! *or* Papæ! *Strange! Heigh!*
are dubious and conſidering, we ſay Hem! *Hum!*
account an act bravely done, we ſay Eu! *or* Euge! *or* Euax! *O brave! Well!*
account it mean and ſlight it, we ſay Hui! *or* Vah! *or* Phy! *Fie! Piſh!*

cannot

cannot forbear to laugh, we say Ha ha he! *Oh ho ho!*
are deeply affected, we say O! *O!* or Ah! *Ah!*
account the case piteous, we say Hei! *or* Heu! *or* Eheu! *Ah! Alas! Alack!*
denounce woe to any, we say Hei! *or* Væ! *Woe! Wailaday!*

636. N. B. *So that to express any thought that may be expressed by onely an* Interjection, *you may use an Interjection alone.*

Q. *What if there be more Words than one, How must they be put together to make* Sentences?

637. *A.* Every Word is to be joined to some other Word in the Sentence, and to be rightly joined: And these two Words are called a *Phrase.*

Q. *What then is a* Phrase?

638. *A.* A *Phrase* is two Words put rightly together towards making a Sentence, as the best speakers have used to doe, as

I am, thou art, he is, *not* I art, thou is, he am.
I love, thou lovest, he loveth, *not* I loveth, thou love, he lovest, *&c.*

Q. *How may a Learner know to put Words rightly together as they did?*

639. *A.* To teach you that, here shall all along be set down

I. **Exemples** shewing how the best Speakers put words together.
II. **Rules** directing you to *imitate* them.
III. **Exercises** for your imitation of those *Exemples* by the direction of these *Rules.*

N. B. *And these three shall be full, plain and easie, and in the natural order so that you shall be taught the* first *motion in speaking* first, *and the* second second, *and the* third third, &c. *and your way shall be made so* clear, *and your directions so* true, *and all impediments so removed, that you cannot fail to make any Sentence right, if you will take heed.*

Q. *How many such motions are to be made for making any Sentence?*

640. *A.* There are to be made XIII. *motions*, which will make XIII *Phrases.*

§ 1. The First Phrase.

Q. *Which is the first motion towards making a Sentence?*

641. *A.* The first *step* is to call on that thing which we speak to, as *O Father! O Master! Soho Thomas!*

Q. *Which are the* two words *to be put together in this first Phrase?*

642. *A.* The I. is an Interjection of *calling*, as O, eho, heus.
The II. is a Substantive of the Vocative Case, as Pater! Domine!

Q. *Give me some Exemples how the Latins used to put these together?*

I. Exem-

I. Exemples of the First Phrase.

O filia! *O daughter!* Eho Adāme! *Soho Adam!* Heus pater! *Ho father!*
O anima! *O soul!* Io puer! *Oh boy!* Heus mater! *Ho mother!*

Q. *What is the Rule to direct us to make the like?*
643. *A.* ——

II. The Rule of the First Phrase.

Whensoever any thing is to be *called upon*
First use an Interjection of *calling*, O! Io! Eho! Heus!
Then put to it the Name of the *Thing called* in the Vocative Case.

Q. *What are the* Exercises *for* Imitation *of this Phrase?*
644. *A.* ——.

III. Imitations of the First Phrase.

N. B. *The* Latin *Exemples are to be turned into* English *and the* English *into* Latin.

I. Decl. Sing.	O Anna!	*O Mary!*
	O Catharīna!	*O Barbara!*
	O Elizabētha!	*O Joan!*
	O Hanna!	*O Sarah!*
	Heus Martha!	*O Susan!*
	Heus Thomā!	*O Luke!*
I. Decl. Plur.	Io filvæ!	*O stars!*
	O bestiæ!	*O schools!*
	O domĭnæ!	*O churches!*
	O femĭnæ!	*O mistresses!*
	Heus ancillæ!	*O Queens!*
	O aviæ!	*Ho girles!*
II. Decl. Sing.	O Abrahāme!	*O Benjamin!*
	O Christóphŏre!	*O Charles!*
	O Edvarde!	*O Francis!*
	O Henrīce!	*O James!*
	O Marce!	*O Matthew!*
	O Paule!	*O Peter!*
	O Richarde!	*O Robert!*
	O Geórgi!	*O son!*
	O puer!	*O priest!*
	O cœlum!	*O temple!*
II. Decl. Plur.	O Angĕli!	*O Gods!*
	O avi!	*O lords!*
	O cŏqui!	*O babes!*
	O fămŭli!	*O boys!*
	O viri!	*O Priests!*
	O heri!	*O Devils!*
	O filii!	*O minds!*
	O magistri!	*O servitors!*
	O fabri!	*O umpires!*
	O palātia!	*O Kingdoms!*
III. Decl. Sing.	O Dánie!	*O Samuel!*
	O David!	*O John!*
	O sŏl!	*O man!*
	O gigas!	*O dwarf!*
	O testis!	*O judge!*
	O latro!	*O thief!*
	O vates!	*O leader!*
III. Decl. Plur.	O mares!	*O women!*
	O patres!	*O mothers!*
	O sorōres!	*O brothers!*
	O uxōres!	*O grandchildren!*
	O cīves!	*O Kings!*
	O procĕres!	*O souldiers!*
	O interprĕtes!	*O guarders!*

IV. D. S. O spiritus! O anus! O domus! O magistratus!	IV. D. P. O spirits! O old-wives! O houses! O magistrates!	V. D. S. O facies! O res! O dies!	V. D. P. O faces! O things! O days!

N. B. *And this is the onely use of the* Vocative Case, *to denote the* thing called.

Q. *Why is this Phrase the first?*

645. *A.* Because before we tell our tale to any thing we call on it to hear us.

§ 2. *The* Second Phrase.

Q. *Having called on the thing to hear us, what is next to be done?*

646. *A.* The next *step* is to tell *what thing is, does,* or *is done,* as *I am, Thou lovest, A book is read.*

Q. *What are the two Words in this second Phrase?*

647. *A.* The first Word is a Substantive of the *Nominative* Case, as *I, thou, a book.*

The second is a Verb finite, as *Am, Lovest, Is read.*

Q. *How may I certainly know which Word is to be the* Nominative *Case?*

648. *A.* First find out the *Verb* Finite, and then ask *who* is? *who* does? or *who* suffers? or *what* is? *what* does? or *what* suffers? and the Word that answers it is always of the Nominative Case, as in *I am,* who is? *I,* that's the N. C. in *Thou lovest,* who loves? *Thou,* that's the N. C. in *The book is read,* what is read? *The book,* that's the N. C.

Q. *Give me some* Exemples *how the Latins used to put these together.*

I. Exemples of the Second Phrase.

Sing. 1.	Ego sum *I am*	Ego amo *I love*	Ego amor *I am loved*
2.	Tu es *thou art*	Tu amas *thou lovest*	Tu amāris *thou art loved*
3.	Ille est *he is*	Ille amat *he loves*	Ille amātur *he is loved*
Plur. 1.	Nos sumus *we are*	Nos amamus *we love*	Nos amāmur *we are loved*
2.	Vos estis *ye are*	Vos amatis *ye love*	Vos amamini *ye are loved*
3.	Illi sunt *they are*	Illi amant *they love*	Illi amantur *they are loved*

Q. *Why is the Verb to every Nominative Case changed so?*

649. *A.* Because of whatever Number or Person the Nom. Case is still the Verb must be put into the same to agree with it, so that

If

If the N. be { of the *Sing.* Number, the Verb muſt be of the *Sing.* N. too. / of the *Plur.* Number, the Verb muſt be of the *Plur.* N. too. / of the *firſt* Perſon, the Verb muſt be of the *firſt* Perſon too. / of the *ſecond* Perſon, the Verb muſt be of the *ſecond* Perſon too. / of the *third* Perſon, the Verb muſt be of the *third* Perſon too.

N.B. 1. { Ego *is the Nominative of the* firſt *Perſon Singular.* / Nos *is the Nominative of the* firſt *Perſon Plural.*

2. { Tu *is the Nominative of the* ſecond *Perſon Singular.* / Vos *is the Nominative of the* ſecond *Perſon Plural.*

3. { *All other Nomin. Caſes when ſpoken of, are of the* third *Perſon* { *Singular if* one *be meant.* / *Plural if* more *than one.*

Q. *Now give me the Rule of the Second Phraſe.*

650. *A.* ———

II. The Rule of the Second Phraſe.

When one is to ſhew that *ſomething is, does,* or *is done*

1. Put down the Word for that thing in the Nominative Caſe.

And 2. Put to it the Verb Finite in the ſame Number and in the ſame Perſ.

Or A Verb Perſonal agreeth with its Nominative Caſe in Number and Perſon.

Q. *Which are the Exerciſes in* Imitation *of the Second Phraſe?*

651. *A.* ———

III. Imitations of the Second Phraſe.

I. Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying* Imperfectly.

And 1. *In the* firſt *Conjugation in* āre.

In the Preſent Tenſe Indicative.

Ego ſto	*I walk*	Ego hio	*I bark*
Tu cubas	*Thou ſtandeſt*	Tu ulŭlas	*Thou gapeſt*
Avis volat	*The bullock lieth*	Canis latrat	*The wolf howls*
Nos ambulamus	*We ſwim*	Nos ſonāmus	*We crack*
Vos labatis	*Ye flie*	Vos tonātis	*Ye ſound*
Piſces nant	*Houſes totter*	Vaſa crepant	*Clouds thunder*
Ego regno	*I breakfaſt*	Ego erro	*I glitter*
Tu jentas	*Thou ſuppeſt*	Tu flagras	*Thou crieſt*
Coquus cœnat	*The King reigns*	Aqua mānat	*The fire blazeth*
Nos ructamus	*We bleat*	Nos clamamus	*We wail*
Vos pugnatis	*Ye belch*	Vos ploratis	*Ye wander*
Agni balant	*Beaſts fight*	Stellæ micant	*Waters trickle*

652. In

652. In the Preter-Imperfect Indicative.

Ego ſtabam	*I was walking*	Ego hiabam	*I cry'd*
Tu volabas	*Thou waſt ſtanding*	Tu clamabas	*Thou barkedſt*
Taurus cubabat	*The owl was flying*	Vulpes ululabat	*A drop trickled*
Nos lababamus	*We were lying*	Nos balabamus	*We howled*
Vos nabatis	*Ye were tottering*	Vos latrabatis	*Ye bleated*
Viri ambulabant	*Whales were ſwiming*	Guttæ manabant	*Oiſters gaped*

653. In the Future Indicative.

Ego errābo	*I will fight*	Ego cœnābo	*I ſhall blaze*
Tu pugnabis	*Thou wilt ſin*	Tu jentabis	*Thou ſhalt belch*
Thomas peccabit	*George will wander*	Guttur ructabit	*The moon ſhall glitter*
Nos plorabīmus	*We will cry out*	Nos regnabīmus	*We ſhall breakfaſt*
Vos clamabītis	*Ye will thunder*	Vos micabītis	*Ye ſhall ſup*
Nubes tonābunt	*Mothers will wail*	Ædes flagrābunt	*Kings ſhall reign*

654. In the Imperative Mood.

Tu ambula	*Lie thou*	Tu ſtato	*Fight thou*
Anas volato	*Let the trout ſwim*	Miles pugnato	*Let the coach ſtand*
Vos cubate	*Walk ye*	Vos crepatote	*Reign ye*
Salmones nanto	*Let ducks flie*	Reges regnanto	*Let guts crack*
Breakfaſt thou	Tu erra	*Howl thou*	Tu ſonato
Let the maid ſup	Fūr plorato	*Let a ſtar glitter*	Torris crepato
Wander ye	Vos cœnate	*Sound ye*	Vos ululatote
Let thieves wail	Ancillæ jentanto	*Let brands blaze*	Sidĕra micanto

N. B. *Exemples of the* Subjunctive Mood *you ſhall have in the* Chapter *of* Double Sentences *to which they belong.*

II. Exemples *of the Second Conjugation in* ēre.

655. In the Preſent Indicative.

Ego valeo	*I languiſh*	Ego fleo	*I mourn*
Tu viges	*Thou art ſad*	Tu rides	*Thou art ſilent*
Anna languet	*John is well*	Carolus ſtupet	*Mother weeps*
Nos mœrēmus	*We are in fear*	Nos ſilemus	*We are amazed*
Vos pavētis	*Ye are in pain*	Vos tacetis	*Ye laugh*
Dentes dolent	*Trees do thrive*	Matres lugent	*Girls hold their peace*
Ego frigeo	*I am ſtiff*	Ego jaceo	*I appear*
Tu cales	*Thou art cold*	Tu ſedes	*Thou lurkeſt*
Aer tepet	*A ſpring boils up*	Latro pendet	*The world lies open*
Nos horremus	*We are warm*	Nos patemus	*We lie*
Vos rigetis	*Ye are hot*	Vos latetis	*Ye hang*
Fontes fervent	*Members quiver*	Campi parent	*Judges ſit*

Ego areo	*I am white*	Ego prandeo	*I burn*
Tu mades	*Thou art green*	Tu frendes	*Thou ſtinkeſt*
Humus humet	*A nail is neat*	Ignis ardet	*The lion gnaſheth*
Nos nitemus	*We are moiſt*	Nos fœtemus	*We dine*
Vos viretis	*Ye are wet*	Vos gaudetis	*Ye ſhine*
Ungues candent	*Clods are dry*	Flammæ lucent	*Boys rejoice*

656. In the Præter-imperfect Indicative.

Ego languēbam	*I was ſad*	Ego ridebam	*I held my peace*
Tu valēbas	*Thou waſt in fear*	Tu flebas	*Thou didſt mourn*
Planta vigēbat	*The head was in pain*	Martha ſilebat	*The babe was amaz'd*
Nos mœrēbāmus	*We did thrive*	Nos ſtupebamus	*We were ſilent*
Vos dolēbātis	*Ye were well*	Vos lugebatis	*Ye did weep*
Columbi pavēbant	*Horſes did pine*	Diſcipuli tacebant	*The Miſtris laught*
Ego prandebam	*I was ſitting*	Ego hærebam	*I was wet*
Tu jacebas	*Thou waſt dining*	Tu ardebas	*Thou waſt dry*
Lux lucebat	*James was lying*	Fundus patebat	*The wind was warm*
Nos ſedebamus	*We were hanging*	Nos frigebamus	*We were white*
Vos pendebatis	*Ye were ſhining*	Vos calebatis	*Ye were green*
Roſæ olebant	*Beaſts were lurking*	Agri madebant	*The ſtones were ſtiff*

657. In the Future Indicative.

Ego candebo	*I will be neat*	Ego humebo	*I ſhall ſtink*
Tu nitēbis	*Thou wilt be green*	Tu tepebis	*Thou ſhalt lie hid*
Herba virēbit	*Silver will be white*	Sulfur fœtebit	*The Ape ſhall gnaſh*
Nos rigēbimus	*We will be dry*	Nos frendebimus	*We ſhall be moiſt*
Vos horrēbitis	*Ye will ſhiver*	Vos parebitis	*Ye ſhall be warm*
Frutices arēbunt	*Canes will be ſtiff*	Gemmæ latebunt	*Things ſhall appear*

658. In the Imperative Mood.

Tu ſilē	*Laugh thou*	Tu gaudēto	*Sit thou*
Lingua tacēto	*Let John mourn*	Joannes mæreto	*Let Peter hang*
Vos lugēte	*Hold ye your peace*	Vos prandetōte	*Shiver ye*
Pupi ridento	*Let tongues be ſilent*	Arma nitento	*Let birds pine*

Exemples *of the* III. *Conjug. in* ĕre.

659. In the Preſent Indicative.

Ego curro	*I go*	Ego tremo	*I rave*
Tu vadis	*Thou runneſt*	Tu gemis	*Thou ſnarleſt*
Serpens ſerpit	*A river flows*	Mare fremit	*The aſs brays*
Nos repĭmus	*We fall*	Nos furimus	*We tremble*
Vos cadĭtis	*Ye creep*	Vos ringitis	*Ye groan*
Rivi fluunt	*Serpents wriggle*	Aſini rudunt	*Seas roar*

Ego

660. In the Præter-imperfect Indicative.

Ego ludẽbam	*I was roaring*	*I did bray*
Tu currebas	*Thou waſt raving*	*Thou didſt wriggle*
Pŏpŭlus plaudebat	*The wolf was ſnarling*	*The people did run*
Nos vivẽbāmus	*We were ſnoring*	*We did grow*
Vos ſtertẽbātis	*Ye were ſneezing*	*Ye did flow*
Arbores creſcebant	*Turtles were groaning*	*Members did tremble*

661. In the Future of the Imperfect Indicative.

Ego ſternuam	*I will ſnore*	Ego vadam	*I ſhall rave*
Tu ſtertes	*Thou wilt ſneeze*	Tu curres	*Thou ſhalt fall*
Vermis repet	*A flie will play*	Anguis ſerpet	*A river ſhall flow*
Nos tremẽmus	*We will groan*	Nos cademus	*We ſhall grow*
Vos gemẽtis	*Ye will tremble*	Vos furetis	*Ye ſhall go*
Muſcæ ludent	*Worms will creep*	Amnes fluent	*Snakes ſhall wriggle*

662. In the Imperative.

Tu freme	*Clap thou*	Tu ludĭto	*Do thou go*
Gramen creſcito	*Let a Dragon rave*	Felis currito	*Let the wave flow*
Vos plaudite	*Roar ye*	Vos vaditote	*Do ye play*
Dracones furunto	*Let Poppys grow*	Undæ fluunto	*Let Cats run*

Exemples *of the* IV. *Conjug.*

663. In the Preſent of the Imperfect Indic.

Ego venio	*I prate*	Ego hinnio	*I mutter*
Tu is	*Thou muttereſt*	Tu mugis	*Thou grunteſt*
Aries ſalit	*The mole ſleeps*	Annulus tinnit	*A Lion roars*
Nos garrīmus	*We go*	Nos mutīmus	*We neigh*
Vos mutītis	*Ye come*	Vos grunnītis	*Ye low*
Talpæ dormiunt	*Rams leap*	Leones rugiunt	*Rings tinkle*

664. In the Præter-imperfect Indic.

Ego ſaliẽbam	*I was grunting*	*I did tinkle*
Tu dormiebas	*Thou waſt roaring*	*Thou diſt roar*
Hirundo garriebat	*The bear was muttering*	*The bullock did low*
Nos mutiebāmus	*We were dancing*	*We did neigh*
Vos rugiebatis	*Ye were ſleeping*	*Ye did prate*
Porci grunniebant	*Men were prating*	*Swallows did come*

665. In the Future of the Imperfect Indic.

Ego grunniam	*I will roar*	*I ſhall ſleep*
Tu rugies	*Thou wilt grunt*	*Thou ſhalt leap*
Vacca mugiet	*An horſe will neigh*	*Winter ſhall come*
Nos mutiēmus	*We will prate*	*We ſhall roar*
Vos garriētis	*Ye will mutter*	*Ye ſhall neigh*
Equi hinnient	*Cows will low*	*Glaſſes will tinkle*

666. In the Imperative Mood.

Tu mutī	*Go thou*	Tu hinnīto	*Come thou*
Sūs grunnīto	*Let* Sam. *come*	Urſus mutīto	*Let* Ben. *go*
Vos garrīte	*Sleep ye*	Vos hinnītote	*Leap ye*
Vituli mugiunto	*Let bubbles dance*	Lupi veniunto	*Let beaſts roar*

§ Exemples *of the firſt Conj. in* ari.

667. In the Preſent Indic. of the Imperfect.

Paſſives.		*Deponents Active.*	
Ego amor	*I am liked*	Ego meditor	*I hunt*
Tu laudaris	*Thou art loved*	Tu precaris	*Thou meditateſt*
Fraus damnatur	*A letter is formed*	Vates fatur	*A ſervitor endeavo*
Nos probamur	*We are tamed*	Nos venamur	*We imitate*
Vos domamini	*Ye are praiſed*	Vos imitamini	*Ye pray*
Literæ formantur	*Cheats are condemned*	Miniſtri conantur	*Prophets ſpeak*

668. In the Præter-imp. Indic.

Ego damnābar	*I was approved*	*I was meditating*
Tu probabāris	*Thou waſt loved*	*Thou waſt praying*
Sermo laudabātur	*The book was formed*	*The King was hunting*
Nos amabamur	*We were tamed*	*We were ſpeaking*
Vos domabāmini	*Ye were condemned*	*Ye were endeavouring*
Libri formabantur	*Speeches were praiſed*	*Dwarfs were imitating*

669. In the Future of the Imperf. Indic.

Ego laudābor	*I will be loved*	Ego fabor
Tu probabĕris	*Thou wilt be praiſed*	Tu precaberis
Idōlum damnabĭtur	*A word will be formed*	Epiſcopus meditabitur
Nos domabĭmur	*We will be approved*	Nos venabimur
Vos amabĭmĭni	*Ye will be tamed*	Vos conabimini
Verba formabuntur	*Idols will be condemned*	Cives imitabuntur

670. T

670. In the Imperative Mood.

Tu laudare	*Be thou condemned*	*Pray thou*
Regina amator	*Let the Kingdom be tamed*	*Let a Citizen hunt*
Vos probabimini	*Be ye praiſed*	*Imitate ye*
Regna domantor	*Let Queens be loved*	*Let Biſhops meditate*

§ Exemples *of the Second Conj. in* ēri.

671. In the Preſent Imperfect Indic.

Paſſives.		*Deponents Active.*	
Ego doceor	*I am held*	Ego reor	*I fear*
Tu tenēris	*Thou art moved*	Tu vereris	*Thou confeſſeſt*
Sol movētur	*The moon is affrighted*	Oculus tuetur	*A leader ſerves*
Nos fovēmur	*We are bitten*	Nos fatemur	*We ſuppoſe*
Vos mordēmini	*Ye are cheriſhed*	Vos medemini	*Ye heal*
Animalia terrentur	*Boys are taught*	Duces merentur	*Eyes behold*

672. In the Præter-imperf. Indic.

Ego docēbar	*I was affrighted*	Ego tuebar
Tu fovebāris	*Thou waſt held*	Tu merebaris
Mūs mordebatur	*A limb was moved*	Hera medebatur
Nos terrebāmur	*We were taught*	Nos verebamur
Vos tenēbamini	*Ye were cheriſhed*	Vos rebamini
Artūs movebantur	*Mice were bitten*	Nuncii fatebantur

673. In the Future Indicative.

Ego mordēbor	*I ſhall be affrighted*	*I will confeſs*
Tu terrebēris	*Thou ſhalt be bitten*	*Thou wilt ſuppoſe*
Penna tenebītur	*A troop ſhall be taught*	*The Mr. will deſerve*
Nos fovebīmur	*We ſhall be moved*	*We will heal*
Vos movebimini	*Ye ſhall be cheriſhed*	*Ye will behold*
Turmæ docebuntur	*Pens ſhall be held*	*Nations will fear*

674. In the Imperative.

Tu docēre	*Be thou moved*	Tu fatetor
Melo mordētor	*Let the raven be frighted*	Gens veretor
Vos movēmīni	*Be ye cheriſhed*	Vos tueminor
Corvi terrentor	*Let melons be bitten*	Judices merentor

§ Exemples *of the Third Conjug. in* i.

675. In the Preſent of the Imperf. Indicat.

Paſſives.		*Deponents.*	
Ego legor	*I am ſold*	Ego queror	*I ſlip*
Tu vendĕris	*Thou art bought*	Tu labĕris	*Thou complaineſt*
Merx emĭtur	*A Book is read*	Paſſer veſcitur	*A man ſtrives*
Nos ducĭ mur	*We are drawn*	Nos ſequimur	*We ſpeak*
Vos volvimĭni	*Ye are led*	Vos loquimini	*Ye follow*
Currūs trahuntur	*Barrels are roul'd*	Homines nĭtuntur	*Sparrows feed*

676. In the Præter-imp. Indicative.

Ego emēbar	*I was rouled*	*I was ſtriving*
Tu vendēbāris	*Thou was led*	*Thou waſt ſlipping*
Verbum legēbātur	*A coach was drawn*	*The Turtle was feeding*
Nos trahebāmur	*We were bought*	*We were following*
Vos ducebāmini	*Ye were ſold*	*Ye were ſpeaking*
Polia volvebantur	*Words were read*	*Girls were complaining*

677. In the future of the Imperfect Indic.

Ego ducar	*I will be drawn*	Ego labar
Tu trahēris	*Thou wilt be led*	Tu querēris
Cadus volvētur	*A basket will be ſold*	Frater ſequētur
Nos legēmur	*We will be bought*	Nos veſcēmur
Vos emēmini	*Ye will be read*	Vos nitemini
Corbes vendentur	*Barells will be rouled*	Mulieres loquentur

678. In the Imperative Mood.

Tu ducere	*Be thou rouled*	Tu loquitor	*Complain thou*
Carrus trahitor	*Let a gown be ſold*	Turtur veſcitor	*Let a foot ſlip*
Vos volvimini	*Be ye led*	Vos queriminor	*Speak ye*
Togæ venduntor	*Let carrs be drawn*	Pedes labuntor	*Let turtles feed*

§ Exemples *of the Fourth Conjugat. in* iri.

679. In the Preſ. of the Imperf. Indicat.

Paſſives		*Deponents Actively.*	
Ego audior	*I am puniſhed*	Ego experior	*I enjoy*
Tu punīris	*Thou art ſtricken*	Tu potīris	*Thou beginneſt*

Fabiũ

Fabŭla finītur	*A bundle is bound*	Jana ordītur	*The tongue tryeth*
Nos ſentīmur	*We are heard*	Nos experīmur	*We ariſe*
Vos ferimīni	*Ye are ſenſed*	Vos potimini	*Ye begin*
Faſces vinciuntur	*Tales are ended*	Venti oriuntur	*Fiends try*

680. In the Præter-imperf. Indic.

Ego vinciēbar	*I was ſtricken*	*I was a trying*
Tu feriebāris	*Thou waſt bound*	*Thou waſt enjoying*
Corpus puniebatur	*A ſtripe was felt*	*A conſtellation was ariſing*
Nos audiebamur	*We were ended*	*We were trying*
Vos finiebamini	*Ye were heard*	*Ye were enjoying*
Verbera ſentiebantur	*Bodies were puniſhed*	*Conſtellations were ariſing*

681. In the Future of the Imperf. Indic.

Ego audior	*I ſhall be ſtricken*	Ego potiar	*I will try*
Tu puniēris	*Thou ſhalt be felt*	Tu experieris	*Thou wilt begin*
Epiſtola finiētur	*The leg ſhall be bound*	Cornu orietur	*A ſhout will riſe*
Nos ſentiēmur	*We ſhall be puniſh'd*	Nos experiemur	*We will enjoy*
Vos feriemini	*Ye ſhall be heard*	Vos ordiemini	*Ye will try*
Crura vincientur	*Letters ſhall be ended*	Roſtra orientur	*Horns will riſe*

682. In the Imperative Mood.

Tu audīre	*Be thou ſtricken*	*Do thou try*
Satanas punītor	*Let a Devil be bound*	*Let Joan begin*
Vos ferimini	*Be ye heard*	*Do ye enjoy*
Diaboli vinciuntor	*Let Spirits be puniſh'd*	*Let winds ariſe*

§ Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perfectly.*

1. *Verbs in* aviſſe.

683. In the Præter-perfect. Indicat.

Ego ambulāvi	*I have barked*	Ego hiavi
Tu erraviſti	*Thou haſt bawled*	Tu ululaviſti
Tinca navit	*A partridge hath flown*	Jacobus regnavit
Nos clamavīmus	*We have walked*	Nos cœnavimus
Vos latraviſtis	*Ye have ſtrayed*	Vos jentaviſtis
Perdīces volavērunt	*Tenches have ſwum*	Aquĭlæ ruſtaverunt

684. In the Præter-pluperf. Indic.

Ego navĕram	*I had walked*	*I had breakfaſted*
Tu ambulaveras	*Thou hadſt flown*	*Thou hadſt ſupped*

Milvus erraverat	*The howlet had howled*	*The eagle had cryed*
Nos volaveramus	*We had belched*	*We had barked*
Vos ructaveratis	*Ye had ſwum*	*Ye had reigned*
Ululæ ululaverant	*Kites had ſtrayed*	*Oyſters had gaped*

685. In the Future Perfect. Indicat.

Ego ambulavĕro	*I ſhall have ſtrayed*	*I ſhall have howled*
Tu volavĕris	*Thou ſhalt have walked*	*Thou ſhalt have reigned*
Perca erraverit	*A trout ſhall have ſwum*	*The leech ſhall have belched*
Nos cœnaverĭmus	*We ſhall have flown*	*We ſhall have cryed*
Vos jentaveritis	*Ye ſhall have breakfaſted*	*Ye ſhall have barked*
Truttæ naverint	*Perches ſhall have roved*	*The cochles ſhall have gaped*

§ Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perf. in* eviſſe.

686. In the Præter-perf. Indic.

Ego crĕvi	*I have wept*	Nos nevimus	*We have grown*
Tu neviſti	*Thou haſt grown*	Vos feviſtis	*Ye have ſpun*
Samuel flevit	*The girl hath ſpun*	Stagna creverunt	*Eyes have wept*

687. In the Præter-pluperf. Indicat.

Ego fleveram	Nos neveramus	*I had grown*	*We had wept*
Tu creveras	Vos fleveratis	*Thou hadſt ſpun*	*Ye had grown*
Aranea neverat	Fructus creverant	*A boy had wept*	*Spiders had ſpun*

688. In the Future Perf. Indicat.

Ego nevĕro	Nos fleverĭmus	*I ſhall have grown*
Tu flevĕris	Vos neveritis	*Thou ſhalt have ſpun*
Collis creverit	Colles creverint	*The man ſhall have wept, &c.*

§ Exemples *in* iviſſe.

689. In the Præter-perf. Indic.

Ego ivi	*I have muttered*	Ego dormivi	*I have roared*
Tu quiviſti	*Thou haſt prated*	Tu ſaliviſti	*Thou haſt ſlept*
Anus grunnivit	*A bone hath tinkled*	Pullus hinnivit	*A bullock hath lowed*
Nos mutivimus	*We have gone*	Nos obedivimus	*We have leaped*
Vos garriviſtis	*Ye have been able*	Vos rugiviſtis	*Ye have obeyed*
Oſſa tinniverunt	*Old women---grunted*	Boves mugiverunt	*Colts have neighed*

690. In the Præter-pluperf. Indicat.

Ego grunnivĕram	*I had gone*	*I had leaped*
Tu hinniveras	*Thou hadſt muttered*	*Thou hadſt obeyed*
Ovis iverat	*Mony had tinkled*	*The aſs had roared*

No

Nos mutiveramus	*We had grunted*	*We had lowed*
Vos garriveratis	*Ye had neighed*	*Ye had neighed*
Nummi tinniverant	*The Lords had prated*	*The mules had ſlept*

691. In the Future Perfect. Indicat.

Ego ivĕro	*I ſhall have grunted*	Ego ſalivĕro
Tu grunniveris	*Thou ſhalt have gone*	Tu obedivĕris
Mulus hinniverit	*A man-ſervant ---- prated*	Elephas rugiverit
Nos quiverīmus	*We ſhall have tinkled*	Nos mugiverimus
Vos tinniverītis	*Ye ſhall have been able*	Vos dormiveritis
Famuli garriverint	*Mules ſhall have neighed*	Cameli dormiverint

§ Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perf. in* uiſſe.

692. In the Præter-perf. Indicative

Ego valui	*I have been amazed*	Ego jacui
Tu doluiſti	*Thou haſt been hot*	Tu patuiſti
Papāver viguit	*The aſhes S. have been warm*	Scintilla latuit
Nos ſtupuimus	*We have been well*	Nos horruimus
Vos caluiſtis	*Ye have been pained*	Vos riguiſtis
Cinĕres tepuerunt	*Poppies have thrived*	Alaudæ tacuerunt

693. In the Præter-pluperf. Tenſe Indicat.

Ego patueram	*I had lain hid*	*I had been briſk*
Tu latueras	*Thou hadſt been open*	*Thou hadſt been well*
Merŭla tacuerat	*The ſtock had lain along*	*The Owl had been amazed*
Nos rigueramus	*We had ſhivered*	*We had been warm*
Vos horrueratis	*Ye had been ſtiff* (peace	*Ye had been hot*
Trunci jacuerant	*Black-birds had held their*	*Heads had been in pain*

§ Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perf. in* iſſe.

694.	In the Præter-p. Indicat.	In the Præter-plu. Indic.
Ego ſedi	*I have come*	Ego fugeram
Tu veniſti	*Thou haſt dined*	Tu ſederas
Limax fugit	*The houſe hath tumbled*	Ver venerat
Nos prandimus	*We have nodded*	Nos rueramus
Vos nuiſtis	*Ye have ſitten*	Vos pranderatis
Domūs ruerunt	*Snails have fled*	Capita nuerant

§ Exem-

§ Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perf. in* iſſe *doubling.*

695. In the Præter-perf. Indic.		696. In the Præter-plup. Ind.
Ego ſteti	*I have run*	*I had hung*
Tu cucurriſti	*Thou haſt ſtood*	*Thou hadſt run*
Vultus cecĭdit	*A thief hath hung*	*The nightingale had ſung*
Nos pepĕdimus	*We have ſung*	*We had fallen*
Vos ceciniſtis	*Ye have broke wind*	*Ye had broke wind*
Fures pependerunt	*Countenances have fell*	*Feet had ſtood*

§ Exemples *of Verbs ſignifying Perfectly in* iſſe.

697. In the Præter-perf. Indic.		In the Præter-plu. Ind.	
Ego ceſſi	*I have laughed*	Ego riſeram	*I had ſtuck*
Tu manſiſti	*Thou haſt play'd*	Tu hæſeras	*Thou hadſt abiden*
Pumilio hæſit	*A torch hath ſhined*	Eliſa manſerat	*A candle had ſhined*
Nos riſimus	*We have gone off*	Nos ceſſeramus	*We had gone off*
Vos luſiſtis	*Ye have abiden*	Vos luſeratis	*Ye had laughed*
Făces luxĕrunt	*Dwarfs have ſtuck*	Candelæ luxerant	*Fiſhes had play'd*

Q. *Is this all that is to be learned about the* Second Phraſe?

698. *A.* There are *Three things* yet to be noted about this *Second Phraſe.*

I. Two Nominative Caſes Singular, coupled together, ſpeak of more than one; and ſo being of the Plural Number, muſt have a Verb Plural. As *Samuel & Benjaminus ludunt.* Where obſerve

1. I and another is as much as *we* the firſt Perſon Plural.
2. Thou and another is as much as *ye* the ſecond Perſon Plural.
3. He and another is as much as *they* the third Perſon Plural: as

Ego & Tu cœnamus	*I and thou do dine*
Ego & Petrus jentamus	*I and James do laugh*
Ego & canis latramus	*I and Thomas do thrive*
Tu & equus hinniebatis	*Thou and John were a-ſwearing*
Tu & porcus grunniebatis	*Thou and the aſs were a-ſtraying*
Tu & leo rugiebatis	*Thou and Adam were a-ſinning*
Puer & ulula ululabunt	*The ſun and the moon will ſhine*
Anſer & olor nabunt	*The pool and the lake will be ſtiff*
Avus & nepos ambulabunt	*The thief and the robber will hang*

Q. *Which is the Second thing to be obſerved here?*

699. *A.* II. Not onely Nouns and Pronouns Subſtantive, but whatever denotes that which *is*, or *doth*, or *is done*, is accounted for a Nom. Caſe to the Verb.

Q. *How*

Q. *How many ſuch are there?*

700. *A.* Three. 1. The Gerund in *dum* is the Nom. to the Verb.

Q. *What is the Gerund in* dum *?*

701. *A.* The Gerund in *dum* is the Neut. Gend. of the Particip. in *dus*, as *amandum*, *docendum*; and it ſignifies that an act muſt be done, as

Amandum eſt	*Loving muſt be*
Scribendum erat	*There ſhould have been writing*
Edendum fuit	*There ſhould have been eating*
Cœnandum fuerat	*There had been a neceſſity to ſup*
Fugiendum erit	*There will be a neceſſity to flee*

There is *There was* *There has been* *There had been* *There will be*	*a neceſſity*	*to learn* *to beat* *to dine* *to run* *to fight*

702. 2. The Verb Infinite often tells *what* is, does, or ſuffers, and then it is the Nomin. to the Verb Finite, as

Diſcere juvat	*To try will help*	Studuiſſe juvabat	*To have plaid irketh*
Imitari placet	*To eat will pleaſe*	Vomuiſſe placebat	*To have ſworn hurteth*
Dormire libet	*To drink will like*	Sorbuiſſe libebat	*To have ſlept pleaſeth*
Ludere nocebit	*To want hurteth*	Lavaviſſe nocuit	*To have reigned ſhameth*
Garrire pudebit	*To ſin ſhameth*	Tacuiſſe puduit	*To have laughed liketh*
Jurare pigebit	*To rave irketh*	Fodiſſe piguit	*To have eaten helpeth*

703. 3. A Verb Infinite, with an Accuſative before it, (or a ſentence,) may be the Nom. before the Verb Finite. Of which you ſhall ſee Examples in the next Rule.

Q. *Which is the Third thing to be obſerved in the Second Phraſe?*

The Second Rule of the Second Phraſe.

704. *A.* Note, That if the Verb be Infinite, the word that ſhould be of the Nomin. muſt be put into the Accuſative Caſe. And then it is moſtly engliſhed by that before it; as, *Angelos vivere paret*, That Angels live is clear. Qu. *What is clear?* *Anſ.* That Angels live; and therefore that's the Nominative Caſe to *paret*.

Adamum peccaviſſe liquet	*That the moon glitters is clear*
Evam ediſſe nocuit	*That boys have plaid is plain*
Chriſtum vixiſſe paret	*That girls learn pleaſeth*
Te ſtuduiſſe patet	*That paper is moiſt hurteth*
Solem lucēre placet	*That the biſhop pray is allowed*
Canes latrare licet	*That birds drink is clear*

N. B.

N. B. *In* Engliſh *we commonly put the* Verb Finite firſt, *with it before it, as* It is clear that Angels live. It is plain that you have ſtudied. *And thus you have learned to expreſs* that ſomething is, does, or ſuffers.

§ III. The Third Phraſe.

Q. *Which is the third ſtep towards making a Latin Sentence?*

705. *A.* The next thing is to expreſs that *one thing* is *another*, or is made *another*, or is thought or called *another*; as, I am a Man. A Girl becomes a Woman. Cows are called Cattel.

Q. *How did the* Latins *doe this?*

706. *A.* Firſt, They took, 1. A Verb of *Being*, as eſſe, fŏre *to be*. Or,

2. A Verb of *being made*, as fieri *to be made*. or *to become*. Or,

3. A Verb of *being thought*, as putari, æſtimāri, habēri. Or,

4. A Verb of *being called*, as vocari, dici, *&c.*

and put the right Caſe before it, according to the Second Phraſe.

And then they put the other Subſtantive after the Verb in the ſame Caſe that the Subſtantive before the Verb was in, as,

I. Exemples of the Third Phraſe.

Ego ſum homo	Arbor habetur planta	Vos vocamini vates
Tu fies aſinus	Nos æſtimamur Apoſtoli	Enſes dicuntur arma

Q. *Which is the Rule to teach me to doe this?*

707. *A.*———

II. The Rule of the Third Phraſe.

To expreſs that one thing { is / is made / is thought / is called } another.

Firſt, Put down the Firſt Subſtantive, and its Verb, as in the Second Phraſe.

And then put the Second Subſtantive after the Verb, in the ſame caſe that the Subſtantive before it is in.

Or, Sum, forem, fio, exiſto, and certain verbs paſſives of being thought, and called, will have ſuch Caſe after them as they had before them.

Q. *Now give me ſome Imitations of this third Phraſe.*

708. *A.*———

III. Imita

III. Imitations of the Third Phaſe.

Ego ſum pater	*I am a grandfather*	Ego eram mater
Tu es filius	*Thou art a grandchild*	Tu eras ſoror
Martha eſt filia	*A woman is a grandmother*	Robertus erat frater
Nos ſumus avi	*We are fathers*	Nos eramus virgines
Vos eſtis nepotes	*Ye are ſons*	Vos eratis puellæ
Mulieres ſunt aviæ.	*Girls are daughters*	Viri erant pueri
Ego ero judex	*I will be a thief*	Ego fui magiſter
Tu eris arbĭter	*Thou wilt be a robber*	Tu fuiſti diſcipulus
Gulielmus erit fur	*The maid will be a Mrs.*	Presbyter fuit diaconus
Nos erĭmus latrōnes	*We will be judges*	Nos fuimus proceres
Vos erĭtis adultĕri	*Ye will be umpires*	Vos fuiſtis teſtes
Ancillæ erunt heræ	*Scholars will be maſters*	Duces fuerunt milites
Ego fueram cuſtos	*I had been a ſurety*	*I ſhall have been a Mr.*
Tu fueras interpres	*Thou hadſt been bail*	*Thou ſhalt — a ſervitor*
Franciſcus fuerat præs	*The lady had been a maid*	*The troop — an army*
Nos fueramus cives	*We had been guarders*	*We ſhall — giants*
Vos fueratis magiſtratus	*Ye had been interpreters*	*Ye ſhall — dwarfs*
Domini fuerant vades	*Wives had been ladies*	*Schools ſhall — churches*

2. *Exemples of* fieri, *to become.*

Scabies fit lepra	*Meat becomes fleſh*	*Young ones become birds*
Pupus fiebat vir	*Drink became urine*	*Calves were made bulls*
Tabes fiet peſtis	*Blood will become milk*	*Pigs will be made hogs*

3. *Exemples of* putari, æſtimari, haberi.

Ego putabor gigas	Nos habebimur beſtiæ	*I am thought an owl*
Tu æſtimaberis pumilio	Vos æſtimabimini bubones	*Thou art eſteemed an aſs*
Capo habebitur gallus	Gallinæ putabuntur olores	*A waſp's account. a bee, &c.*

4. *Exemples of* vocari, dici, ſalutari.

Ego vocor umbra	*I was called a camel*	*We were called geeſe*
Tu diceris vipera	*Thou waſt called an elephant*	*Ye were named ſheep*
Maria ſalutatur luſcinia	*The hawk was ſaluted an eagle*	*Cotes were called palaces*

N. B. 708. *If theſe Verbs be uſed infinite, the word after them muſt be put into the Accuſ. Caſe, as the word before them was. See* No. 703. *as,*

Liquet me eſſe patrem	*It is clear that I am a grandfather*
Placet te eſſe filium	*It is pleaſing that thou art a grandchild*
Pudet me fieri furem	*It's ſhamefull that ſouldiers have been thieves*

N. B.

N. B. 1. *Of this you ſhall ſee more Exemples* N°. 2. *The reaſon why the two Subſt. are put in the ſame Caſe, you will learn in the* IX. Phraſe. 3. *The Nominative Caſe is no more uſed in the Latin Tongue, but in theſe two Phraſes.*

§ IV. The Fourth Phraſe.

Q. *Which is the Fourth Phraſe?*

709. *A.* The Fourth Phraſe is to expreſs an *Acting on ſomething*, as facere opus, *to doe a work*; amare bellum, *to love war*; claudere os, *to ſhut the mouth.*

Q. *What two words make this Fourth Phraſe?*

710. *A.* The firſt is a verb that betokens *to act upon ſomewhat.*

The ſecond is a ſubſtantive in the Accuſative Caſe, that betokens the thing acted on.

Q. *It ſeems then that all Verbs can't be uſed in this Phraſe?*

711. *A.* No: For no verbs Neuter, nor verbs Paſſive, nor all verbs Active neither, can have thus an Accuſative Caſe after them.

Q. *Tell me which verbs Active may, and which may not be uſed in this Phraſe.*

712. *A.* A verb active betokens to doe, or to act, and of ſuch there are two ſorts:

1. Some ſo betoken to act, that the Action *paſſes over* on *ſomething*, and there is ſomething *done*, or *acted upon*, as in Cædere canem, *to ſmite a dog.* Here the action of *ſmiting* paſſes upon the dog: The dog is the thing *acted upon*, or *ſmitten*; and ſuch verbs are called *Tranſitive*, from tranſire *to paſs over*, &c.

2. But ſome verbs Active betoken barely to doe, and there is no action ſaid to paſs over upon any thing. *So* regnare, nare, repere. Theſe ſignifie to doe, *to reign*, *to ſwim*, *to creep*, but we ſay not *to reign any thing*, *to ſwim* or *to creep any thing*; and theſe are called verbs *Intranſitive.*

Now onely verbs Tranſitive can have an Accuſative Caſe after them, according to this Phraſe.

Q. *Tell me again plainly. What is a verb Tranſitive?*

713. *A.* A verb Tranſitive is that verb that ſo betokens to doe, that the action paſſes on ſome thing, and the word for that thing is to be of the Accuſative Caſe.

Q. *Give me ſome Exemples of this.*

714. *A.*———

I. Exem-

I. Exemples of the Fourth Phraſe.

Deus creavit mundum	*The world is the thing* created	And therefore is put in the Accuſative Caſe.
Dominus formavit hominem	*Man is the thing* formed	
Homo colebat hortum	*The garden is the thing* tilled	
Satanas ſefellit Evam	*Eve is the perſon* deceived	

Q. *Give me the Rule of the Fourth Phraſe?*
715. *A.* ———

II. The Rule of the Fourth Phraſe.

To expreſs an acting on ſome thing.
1. Put down a Verb Tranſitive. And
2. Add to it the Subſtantive Name of the thing acted upon, in the Accuſative Caſe.

Or, All ſuch Verbs as are Tranſitives have after them an Accuſative Caſe.

Q. *What doth this Rule teach more than I knew before?*
A. Onely to put an Accuſative Caſe after a Verb Tranſitive.

Q. *Give me ſome Exerciſes for Imitation of this.*
716. *A.* ———

III. Imitation of the Fourth Phraſe.

Ego orno ædes	*A change a garment*	Ego arabam agrum
Tu mutas veſtes	*Thou keepeſt gowns*	Tu plantabas plantam
Faber format claves	*A ſheep makes a lamb*	Aqua rigabat liram
Nos juvamus plebem	*We adorn a building*	Nos vorabamus pyra
Vos ſervatis togam	*Te help the rabble*	Vos vitabatis vitia
Oves creant agnos	*Smiths form a key*	Apes guſtabant thymum

I ſhall love the apples	Ego turbavi fontem
Thou ſhalt like the cherries	Tu ſtrangulaviſti vermem
The leaf will hide the grapes	Vulpes damnavit uvas
We will kill the locuſts	Nos probavimus poma
Te will number the flowers	Vos laudaviſtis pruna
Tongues will praiſe the nuts	Rami celaverunt fructûs

Ego moneo te	*I ſhear an hee-goat*	Ego movebam labra
Tu cies turbam	*Thou milkeſt a ſhee-goat*	Tu vovebas templum
Magiſter urget opus	*The horſe bites the bridle*	Præda mulcebat iram
Nos mulgemus capros	*We admoniſh you*	Nos terrebamus veſpas
Vos tondetis capras	*Te raiſe routs*	Vos torrebatis ficus
Equi mordent fræna	*Mrs. urge works*	Balænæ im-plebant ventres

Ego

Ego vievi dolium — *We have filled the barrels*
Tu im-pleviſti cadum — *Ye have ſpun threads*
Dorothea nevit filum — *Wrights have hooped hogſheads*

Ego docueram diſcipulos — *I had ſupped up the pottage*
Tu ſorbueras cereviſiam — *Thou hadſt held the butter*
Paulus tenuerat poculum — *Peter had had the wine*
Nos exercueramus artem — *We had taught the troops*
Vos arcueratis hoſtem — *Ye had exerciſed the bands*
Favi habuerant mel — *Armies had kept off armies*

Ego fingo literas — *I reade an epiſtle* — Ego mittebam pilam
Tu vertis veru — *Thou frameſt a letter* — Tu trahebas raſtrum
Saxum fiſtit ſpumam — *A husband leads a wife* — Cymba vehebat remos
Nos ducimus uxores — *We turn ſpits* — Nos ferebamus contos
Vos volvitis globum — *Ye ſtop globes* — Vos linquebatis anchoras
Epiſcopi legunt biblia — *Boys rowl an orb* — Apoſtoli ſternebant idōla

Ego ponam malleum — *I will faſten the plank*
Tu figes tabulas — *Thou wilt dreſs the meat*
Coquus coquet cibos — *A gale will bow a reed*
Nos flectemus ſcipionem — *We will nouriſh hope*
Vos tendetis arcum — *Ye will put mony*
Lucra alent luxum — *Croſſes will ſtretch the limbs*

Ego carpſi mala — *I have eat a cherry*
Tu ediſti ceraſa — *Thou haſt drunk wine*
Hirudo ſuxit ſanguinem — *The ape hath crop't an apple*
Nos bibimus venenum — *We have ſucked poiſons*
Vos mandiſtis panem — *Ye have knawed cheeſes*
Mures roſerunt caſeum — *Pigs have champed beans*

Ego audio ſonum — *I draw waters* — Ego poliebam galeam
Tu ſentis dolorem — *Thou nurſeſt a child* — Tu feriebas poſtem
Puls nutrit neſrendem — *A foot props a table* — Funis vinciebat pannum
Nos haurimus aerem — *We feel pains* — Nos ſanciebamus legem
Vos conditis cucumeres — *Ye hear ſounds* — Vos puniebatis vulgum
Oſſa fulciunt corpus — *Women pickle oiſters* — Plumæ farciebant lectum

Ego fodiam fundum — *I will ſhake the hazels* — *Hear thou the ſpeech*
Tu facies corbem — *Thou ſhalt dig the ground* — *Let the noſe perceive a ſmell*
Avis pariet ovum — *An hand will ſnatch a pea*
Nos quatiemus corylum — *We will flee the plague* — *Strike ye the dragon*
Vos fugietis accipitrem — *Ye will make baſkets* — *Let Magiſtrates puniſh crimes*
Fures rapient fraga — *Birds will bring forth eggs*

Ego venor cervum — *I ſmell ivys* — Ego patiar te
Tu ſequēris leporem — *Thou lookeſt to the peas* — Tu ſolaberis me
Mas tuētur fœminam — *The hare follows the dog* — Sara mirabitur ſe
Nos ordimur fabulam — *We deſerve honour* — Nos hortabimur vos

Vos

Vos meremini laudem	*Te begin ſtories*	Vos imitabimini nos
Hœdi odorantur hederam	*Cats hunt flies*	Teſtes verebuntur ſe

Q. *Are onely Nouns and Pronouns Subſtantives the Accuſative Caſe after Verbs Tranſitives?*

717. *A.* Not onely Nouns and Pronouns Subſtantives, but whatever other word or words betoken the thing *done* or *acted upon* are accounted the Accuſative Caſe to the Verb Tranſitive.

So 1. A Verb Infinite is the Accuſative Caſe after the Verb Tranſitive: as

Ego amo ludere	where	*to play*	is the thing	*loved*
Tu cupis dormire		*to ſleep*		*deſired*
Mus conatur currere		*to run*		*endeavoured*

And therefore is accounted of the Accuſative Caſe.

Imitations *with more* Exemples.

Ego didici ſcribere	*I dare to fight*	Ego ſtudeo vacare
Tu cœpiſti legere	*Thou uſeſt to bray*	Tu vis tumere
Scapha ſolet nare	*A louſe can bite*	Delphin non vult capi
Nos poſſumus cedere	*We are accuſtomed to grind*	Nos avemus ſcire
Vos ſueviſtis ſtrepere	*Te have learned to be ſilent*	Vos quitis meminiſſe
Pulices audent mordere	*Dews have begun to fall*	Pueri debent conſiderare

Q. *Which is the Second thing put after Verbs Tranſitive as an Accuſative Caſe?*

718. *A.* II. An Infinite Verb with an Accuſative before it according to the Second Rule of the Second Phraſe N° 703. is put oft as an Accuſative after a Verb Tranſitive. As

Nos ſcimus leonem rugire	*That a lion roars*	is the thing	*known*	and ſo of the Accuſative Caſe.
Ego video torrem ardere	*That a brand burns*		*ſeen*	
Tu negas tubam ſonare	*That a Trumpet ſounds*		*denied*	

Imitations *with more* Exemples.

Ego ſentio ignem urĕre	*I think that the King comes*
Tu putas te valĕre	*Thou believeſt that ſtones live*
Bubo credit ſe canĕre	*John ſaith that he ſcareth*
Nos opinamur vos furĕre	*We feel that live-coals burn*
Vos dicitis nos turgēre	*Te ſay that Prophets prate*
Homines aiunt ſidĕra oriri	*Old women think that ſtars fall*
Ego judico vos dormiviſſe	*I have known that play hath harmed*
Tu cenſes ratem arſiſſe	*Thou remembereſt that the earth hath quaked*
Petrus jurat ſe metuiſſe	*The man hopes that faults have been hid*
Nos meminimus nos vomuiſſe	*We ſwear that ſnow hath been white*
Vos noviſtis tellurem maduiſſe	*Te deem that the ſummer is fled*
Adulteri ſperant ſe latuiſſe	*Girls judge that garments adorn*

Ego patior me moneri	*I complain that I am praised*
Tu quereris sagittas parari	*Thou commandest that the play be ended*
Orcus arguit crimina puniri	*The prison tells that men are punished*
Rex jubet palatium strui	*The bible shews that graves have been*
Tu finito sermonem fieri	*We suffer that leagues be broken*
Vultus clamat cor timere	*The law makes out that men sin*

Historiæ narrant tellurem esse orbem	we know	*that crabs are animals*
Tu fateris te esse asinum		*that pheasants are birds*
Angeli mirabantur se fieri Diabolos		*that dishes are vessels*

719. N. B. *The Interjections,* En! Ecce! Hem! Proh! *and* Apage! *(which indeed is a Verb) when used* Transitively *have an* Accusative Case, as *En aras! Ecce altaria! Hem Davum tibi! Proh fidem! Apage istam salutem!*

---

§ V. The Fifth Phrase.

Q. *Which is the Fifth step to be made in making Sentences?*

720. *A.* The Fifth Phrase is when we express our thought by an Adverb or Preposition added to a Verb: as, To love *now.* To stay *here,* &c.

Q. *Which then are the two words relating to each other in this Phrase?*

721. *A.* The first is a *Verb* as set down by the Second Phrase. The second is an *Adverb* or *Preposition* added to that Verb: as

I. Exemples of the Fifth Phrase.

Q. Num Rex venit?	Q. An tu scribis?	Q. Ludunne pueri?
A. Imo Rex venit	A. Næ ego scribo	A. Pueri quidem ludunt
Rex non venit	Ego haud scribo	Tu ne lude

Q. *Give me the Rule of this Phrase?*

722. *A.* ——

II. The Rule of the Fifth Phrase.

When you express your thought by an Adverb or Preposition after a Verb.

1. Set down the Verb according to the foregoing Rules.
2. To it add the Adverb or Preposition.

N. B. So that all, that this Rule teaches, is to put an Adverb or Preposition to the Verb.

723.

III. Imita-

III. Imitations of the Fifth Phraſe.

Q. Ubi vos habitatis?
Ego habito hīc
Familia habitat ĭbi

Q. *Where dwell the tribes?*
The tribes dwell here
Families dwell there

Q. Quid uſquam manet diu?
Umbræ manent nuſquam

Q. *What any-where thrives long?*
A ſhadow continues no-where

Q. Unde res veniunt?
Rixæ veniunt hinc
Schola migravit inde

Q. *Whence flit the Schools?*
The Schools flit hence
A quarrel ariſes thence

Q. Quo vos gradimini?
Nos gradĭmur huc

Q. *Whither fly the birds?*
The ſparrow flies hither

Q. Quando venit hiems?
Nix cecĭdit hĕri
Glacies riguit dudum
Grando crepavit olim
Bruma fremit jam
Fulmen volat nunc
Imber veniet mox
An cœlum ruit unquam?
Humus ardet nunquam

Q. *When come ſhowers?*
Showers fell yeſterday
Winter roared long ſince
I ſaw hail long ago
Snows fall now
Lightnings glitter now
Froſts will follow ſtraight
Do ſtars tumble ever?
A ſtar will never fall

Q. Quoties tu legiſti biblia?
Ego legi biblia ſemel
Suſanna legit Lucam bis
Tu maculaviſti librum ter
Ego fudi lacrimas quater
Nos erravimus ſæpe
Tu mentiris ſemper

Q. *How oft have ye read S. Matthew?*
We have read S. Matthew once
The boys have read S. Mark twice
I have fowled the paper thrice
We have powred a tear four times
Ye have blotted books often
Thou uſeſt to play always

Q. Quomodo homines loquuntur?
A. Lucas loquitur temĕre
Nos loquimur fruſtra
Turba fatur ſimul

Q. *How do boys play?*
A. *John plays raſhly*
James endeavours in vain
Peter and Paul play together

Tu i præ
Ego ibo pone

I will go before
Come thou after

§ VI. The Sixth Phraſe.

Q. *What is the Sixth Phraſe?*

724. *A.* The Prepoſition in the former Phraſe ever ſignifies a *regard to ſomething*: as, If you go *before*, you go *before ſomething*; If I come *after*, I come

after *ſomething*. Now the Sixth Phraſe will teach you how rightly to expreſs *that thing*: As

Go thou before *me* — I will come after *thee*

Q. *Which are the Two words related to each other in this Phraſe?*
725. *A.* The Firſt is a Prepoſition as ſet down by the Fifth Phraſe. The Second is the Subſtantive Name of the *thing* it points at.
Q. *Give me ſome Exemples to make this plain.*
726. *A.* ——

I. Exemples of the Sixth Phraſe.

Ego eo ad templum — Tu ſtas ante oſtium
Miles jacet intra caſtra — Caſæ ſtruuntur apud forum
Forĭca eſt poſt horreum — Vos ſorbetis jus præter vinum

Q. *Which is the Rule of the Sixth Phraſe?*
727. *A.* ——

II. The Rule of the Sixth Phraſe.

To expreſs the regards of one thing to another.
I. Put down a Prepoſition according to the former Rule.
II. To it put the Name of the thing it points at, in the right Caſe.
Q. *What doth this Rule teach new?*
728. *A.* Onely to put the Subſtantive after the Prepoſition in its right Caſe.
Q. *Which is the right Caſe after the Prepoſition?*
729. *A.* 1. After the firſt 27 Prepoſitions the Accuſative Caſe } is the
2. After the next 12. the Ablative Caſe } right
3. After the laſt 4. ſometimes the Accuſ. and ſometimes the Ablat. } Caſe.

730. § 1. The Firſt Special Rule of the Sixth Phraſe.

The firſt 27 *Prepoſ.* N° 480. *have after them an Accuſ. Caſe.*

1. Ad At.

Cardo ſtridet ad januam — *The Keeper lies at the door*
Exempla ſunt ad manum — *The Prieſt prayeth at the altar*

Ad To.

Aurora vocat ancillam ad colum — *The evening calls boys to bed*
Frigus jubet venire ad ignem — *Thirſt bids us to ſtep to the cellar*

2. Ad-

2. Adverſus *or* Adverſum Towards, againſt.

Bellum geritur adverſus hoſtes	*Exerciſe thou fear towards God*
Tu acue gladium adverſum lupum	*Whet ye knives againſt a bear*

3. Apud At, with one, i. e. at his houſe.

Olera venduntur apud forum	*Wares are bought at the Town*
Menſæ fiunt apud fabrum	*James ſupp'd with John*

4. Ante Before.

Tenebræ non migrant ante lucem	*Fleſh is roaſted before the fire*
Signum dabitur ante prælium	*The drum ſounds before the fight*

5 & 6. Cis *or* Citra Behither, short of, on this ſide.

Aula patet cis culinam	*The kitchin lies behither the hall*
Turres videntur citra arcem	*A caſtle is ſeen behither the tower*

7. Circum About, round.

Villæ jacent circum urbem	*An hedge is put about the fields*
Nefrendes ludunt circum haram	*A mound will be dug about the village*

8. Circa About, nigh.

Pulices ſaliunt circa cameram	*A flea leaps about the walls*
Dux habet cohortem circa ſe	*Leaders have bands about them*

9. Contra Againſt.

Tu noli offendere contra leges	*Faults are made againſt art*
Vitia ſunt contra naturam	*Nature ſtrives againſt vice*

10. Erga To, towards.

Amor exercetur erga parentes	*Carry thy ſelf well towards Magiſtrates*
Diaconus facit officium erga Presbyterum	*Prieſts do duties towards the Biſhop*

11. Extra Without, on the out-ſide of.

Greges paſcuntur extra oppidum	*Men feed a flock without the walls*
Balneum ſtruitur extra portas	*Baths are built without the gate*

12. Intra Within.

Vulnus fervet intra viſcera	*The heart boils within the breaſt*
Sanguis ſalit intra venas	*The veins lurk within the ſkin*

13. Infra Beneath, below.

Suræ ornant crura infra poplitem	*The heel is placed beneath the ancle*
Calx fulcit tibiam infra genu	*The breaſt-bone ſtruts below the throat*

14. Inter Between, among.

Dorſum tumet inter humeros	*Knuckles ariſe between the joints*
Tergum mouſtratur inter latĕra	*The itch appears between the fingers*
Poma ſparguntur inter puĕros	*Divide ye the money among the girls*

15. Juxta Beſide, nigh to, by.

Tumbæ ſtruebantur juxta viam	*The way lies beſide the tombs*
Boves arant juxta pagum	*The fiſhes ſwim by the mill*

16. Ob For, becauſe of.

Plagæ debentur ob ſceléra	*Boys are beaten for faults*
Merces datur ob opus	*Pay thou moneys for labour*

17. Penĕs With, i. e. in ones keeping or power.

Honor eſt penes Regem	*Honours have been with Kings*
Præmium erit penes arbitrum	*Rewards will be with Umpires*

18. Per By, by means of.

Nos oramus Deum per Chriſtum	*Strife grows by deceit*
Tu fallis magiſtrum per miniſtrum	*We deceive the mother by the daughter*

Per Through, along.

Cives queruntur per vicos	*Men carry burthens along the ſtreets*
Canes venantur per valles	*A dog hunts through the vally*

19. Pone Behind, after.

Simia cacavit pone arcam	*The doe lurks behind the buſh*
Felis minxit pone cathedram	*The wood appears behind the grove*

20. Poſt After, behind.

Ego ero apud te poſt menſem	*We will be with you after an hour*
Tu paras clypeum poſt pugnam	*Ye prepare an army after the war*

21. Præter Beſide, except, ſave.

Herus tribuit potum præter cibum	*Maſters give bread beſide fleſh*
Nemo ſtudet præter vos	*No-body cares except the miſtreſs*

22. Propter

22. Propter **Nigh to, hard by, by.**

Aquæ fluunt propter marginem	*The whales ſleep nigh the ſhore*
Caput dolet propter aurem	*The feet ake hard by the heel*

Propter For, becauſe of, by reaſon of.

Tu vira dolum propter metum	*Do thou obey for love*
Virtūs debet coli propter ſe	*Avoid the Sea becauſe of loſs*

23. Secundum **After, next to.**

Labor laudatur ſecundum fidem	*Hony is choſen next after butter*
Tu cole parentes ſecundum Deum	*We regard the Queen next to the King*

Secundum After, according to.

Ego legi hiſtoriam ſecundum Marcum	*Exemples are made according to art*
Fama ſpargitur ſecundum laborem	*Praiſes are ſung according to works*

24. Secus **By, nigh, cloſe-by.** *No good word.*

Arbor creſcit ſecus callem	*Grain is ſowed by the ways*
Vites naſcuntur ſecus ripam	*An hazle grew by the lake*

25. Supra **Above, over.**

Cornua tollunt ſe ſupra verticem	*The head liſts it ſelf above the horns*
Uxores ſedent ſupra viros	*A ſiſter ſits above a brother*

26. Trans **Over, to the other ſide of.**

Vehæ vehunt linum trans vadum	*Swallows fly over the Sea*
Piper portatur trans occănum	*Ships ſwim over the pool*

27. Ultra **Beyond.**

Tu poſuiſti ſepem ultra limitem	*Set thou the bounds beyond the hedges*
Gloria manebit ultra vitam	*Puniſhment remains beyond death*

731. § II. The Second Special Rule of the Sixth Phr.

The next 12 *Prepo.* N° 481. *have an Abl. Ca. after them.*

1. A *before a Conſonant*, Ab *or* abs *before Vowels and Conſonants* **From.**

Arundĭnes veniunt ab Ægypto	*Canes will come from India*
Ego novi te à capite ad calcem	*The wall will defend us from cold*

A, ab, abs Of, by.

Febris curabatur ab Jesu — *Necklaces are worn by Virgins*
Panes coquuntur à populo — *The head is combed by the maid*

A, ab After, behind.

Dæmon stetit à tergo — *After play Scholars study*
A jentacülo nos meditamur — *After supper go thou to bed*

2. Absque Without, not for.

Absque te si esset nos nunquam cœnaremus
Absque magistro si esset nos hodie dormiremus
Were it not for the Cook we had not dined to day
Were it not for the Mistress we should die.

3. Cum With, together with.

Tu indue pallium cum tunica — *We put on the coat with the cloak*
Vos exuite pallam cum galero — *Thou putteſt off the hat with the mantle*

4. Coram Before, i. e. before ones face, in presence of.

Fur plectitur coram Judice — *Thieves are punish'd before Judges*
Mures lingunt butyrum coram coquo — *Scholars laugh before the Master*

5. Clam Without ones knowledge, unknown to one.

Ego duxi uxorem clam Patre — *Wives are taken unknown to Fathers*
Filia fugit clam Matre — *Mothers marry unknown to Daughters*

6. De Of, out of, from.

Murmur auditur de luco — *We hear murmurs out of the wood*
Tu prome pecuniam de crumēna — *Moneys are brought forth of purses*

De About, of, concerning.

Tu consule coquos de opsonio — *We consult the palate about a taste*
Mulières garriunt de supellectile — *A woman will prate of a besome*

7. Ex *before a Vowel*, Ex *or* è *before a Conſ.* Of, out of.

Nihil fit ex nihilo — *We cannot make flour out of bran*
Carbones fiunt ex prunis — *Glasses may be made of ashes*

8. Palam Before, i. e. in sight of.

Tu noli meiere palam populo — *Do not thou pray before the rabble*

9. Pra

9. Præ Before.

Balænæ agunt haleces præ ſe — *A wolf drives the ſheep before him*

Præ Before, i. e. in compariſon of, in reſpect of.

Tu temnis cochleam præ oſtrea — *We deſpiſe oiſters in reſpect of cockles*
Nos ſpernimus cancros præ ſoleis — *Ye chuſe a ſole before a crab*

Præ For, through, becauſe of, out of.

Femora tremunt præ timore — *The heart leaps for fear*
Fruges moriuntur præ ſiti — *The turtle pines for love*

10. Pro For, inſtead of.

Gentes colunt imaginem pro Deo — *You count an ounce for a pound*
Ego dedi aſſem pro papyro — *Idols are worſhipped for Gods*

11. Sine Without.

Schola non regitur ſine virgis — *Schools can't be ruled without a rod*
Nemo purgat farra ſine vanno — *Barly is not cleanſed without a ſieve*

12. Tenus Up to, even to, as far as.

Tu mergis corpus inguinibus tenus — *Plunge thou the head up to the ears*
Vos odiſtis ſceleră verbo tenus — *Cover the breaſt up to the neck*

732. § III. The Third Spec. Rule of the Sixth Phr.

Theſe four Prepoſitions, In, ſub, ſuper *and* ſubter, *when they denote* motion, into *or* towards *a thing have an Accuſative, otherwiſe an Ablative.*

1. In Towards, for, into.

Nos legimus lactucas in cœnam — *Gather thou ſtrawberries for diner*
Tu divide ſyllabam in literas — *We divide words into ſyllables*

In In.

Reges ſolent ſedere in throno — *Jewels uſe to be put in a Crown*
Hordeum elixatur in fornace — *A young one is cheriſhed in the womb*

2. Sub Under, down under.

Mappa ceeidit ſub ſcamnum — *The ſpoons are fallen down under the table*
Cochleare jacet ſub diſco — *The diſhes lie under the napkins*

3. Subter

3. Subter Under, in under.

Lumbrīcus naſcītur ſubter terra	*Ground-worms thrive under ground*
Vulpes current ſubter antra	*Fiſhes run in under banks*

4. Super Above.

Tu non debes cubare ſuper herum	*The maſter ſits above the miſtriſs*
Sceptrum ponitur ſuper corona	*We put the crown above the ſcepter*

Super About, of, concerning.

Faber loquitur ſuper inſtrumentis	*Women talk about the wheel*
Reginæ rogant ſuper Regibus	*Kings will ask concerning Queens*

Q. *Is there any thing yet to be noted about this* Sixth Phraſe?

733. A. *Note* 1. That the Accuſative of the Gerund in *Dum* may be uſed after *Ad, Ante, Inter, Ob, Propter:* as

Exercītus alitur ad vincendum hoſtes	*I came for to buy ſugar*
Homines ungunt roras ante pugnandum	*Horſes rave before taming*
Nos lambimus jus inter edendum	*Cry not out in dining time*
Tu poſcis pretium ob ſolvendum me	*I took money for to accuſe you*
Ego veni propter defendendum te	*You came for to puniſh us*

734. *Note* 2. That the Ablative Caſe of the Gerund in *Dum* may be uſed after *a, ab, abs, de, e, ex, cum, in, pro:* as

Pueri terrentur à diſcendo	*Dogs will not be frighted from barking*
Vos nectitis verba de lavando	*Ye make (knit) delays about painting*
Poenæ oriuntur ex temĕre agendo	*Praiſe will ariſe from ſtudying*

734. *Note* 3. That the natural place of the Prepoſition is next before its Caſe.

But 1. Sometimes the Prepoſition is ſet before the Verb and compounded with it. As

Aves adeunt nidos i. e. eunt ad	*The Biſhop goes to the Church*
Dux anteit turmam, i. e. it ante	*Leaders will go before the troops*
Famŭlus tranſduxit anſĕres pontem	*Servants carry the Ducks over bridges*
Ego detrudo navem ſaxo	*Ships are thruſt from the ſtones*
Nox ſuadet inire ſomnum.	*In the night go thou into the bed*

735. N. B. *Cum* is ſet after *me, te, ſe, quî, nobis, vobis, quibus.*

Quicum vos cupitis vivĕre?	*With whom doſt thou deſire to play?*
Ego cupio vivere tecum	*Wilt thou dine with me?*
Tu ſperas ambulare mecum	*I am willing to ſup with thee*
Nos volumus veſci vobiſcum	*The Scholars did breakfaſt with us*
Vos optatis molere nobiſcum	*We wiſh to ſtudy with you*
Petrus cupit te manere ſecum	*John believes that you waſh with him*

§ VII. The

§ VII. The Seventh Phraſe.

Q. *Which is the* Seventh Phraſe?

736. *A.* The *Seventh Phraſe* is to ſhew that what is, does or is done, *is*, *does*, or *is done* To or For ſomething, that is, to its uſe, gain or loſs.

Q. *Which then are the two words that make this Phraſe?*

737. *A.* The Firſt is a Verb ſet down by the *Second Phraſe*.
The Second is a Subſtantive of the Dative Caſe, as *I write* for *you*.

N. B. Here the Engliſh before the Subſtantive uſe To or For according to the *Sixth Phraſe*. But in Latine they uſe a Dative Caſe.

Q. *Give me ſome Exemples of this.*

738. *A.* ———

I. Exemples of the Seventh Phraſe.

Caſtaneæ ſunt nobis	Ego ſolvi fœnus prædi	Fœnus ſolvitur prædi
Locus fuit conſilio	Tu fregiſti nuces ſimiæ	Nux datur ſimiis
Pax erit eccleſiæ	Anna ſervat baccas ſibi	Baccæ ſervantur vobis

Q. *Which is the Rule of the* Seventh Phraſe?

739. *A.* ———

II. The Rule of the Seventh Phraſe.

When you are to expreſs that ſomething *is*, *does*, or *is done* To or For the acquiſt of another.

I. Put down the Verb according to the *Second Phraſe*.
II. Add to it the name of that thing in the Dative Caſe.
Or, All manner of Verbs put *Acquiſitively* will have a Dative Caſe.

Q. *What mean you by Verbs put* Acquiſitively?

740. *A.* Then is a Verb put *Acquiſitively*, when by it is expreſſed that ſome good or bad is *acquired*, or got To or For ſomething.

Q. *What doth this Rule teach you more than you learn'd before?*

741. *A.* Onely to put a *Dative Caſe* to a Verb put *Acquiſitively*.

Q. *Give me ſome* Imitations *of the* Seventh Phraſe.

742. *A.* ———

III. Imitations of the Seventh Phraſe.

Pueri debent cavēre natibus	*Women uſe to beware for the face*
Tu monſtra nobis muſculum	*I will ſhew to you the Muſcles*

Ego

Ego pandam feneſtram muſcis	*Do not thou open the windows to the wind*
Formica forat ſibi rimam	*Amets will bore to themſelves chinks*
Famuli pinſunt fabas mulis	*Mules grind peas for the men-ſervants*
Ancilla depſit farinam familiæ	*Maids knead bread for the men*
Locuſta quærit ſibi ſuccum	*Locuſts ſeek to themſelves dew*
Pater dabit annulum digito	*Fathers give rings for the fingers*
Mater parat torquem brachio	*Mothers prepare chains for the armes*
Soror torquet monile collo	*Necklaces are wreathed for necks*
Vos ſemper cedite parentibus	*Parents do not give way to ſons*
Coquus jungit ſaccharum cinnamomo	*Cooks join cinnamon to ſugar*
Nemo miſcet piper thuri	*No-body will put frankincenſe to pepper*
Tu domabis mihi damam	*I have tamed the bucks for you*
Fraudes non pariunt homini laudem	*Deceit brings glory to no-body*
Frater ſpondet ſororem viro	*The ſiſter engages the brother to the maid*
Tu ſoles ferre rumores matri	*Ye are wont to tell tales to the father*
Boves arant agros hominibus	*A bullock plows a field for the King*
Campi creant fœnum pecori	*The earth brings graſs for beaſts*
Vulpes fodiunt antra pullis	*A cave is dug for foxes*
Falx metet tibi ſegetem	*Crops are mowen for the city*
Puella ſuit veſtem pupo	*The daughter ſowes a coat for the mother*
Fabri fingunt cortes avibus	*Coops are framed for ducks*
Schola vacat ſtudiis	*Ye are not at leiſure for buſineſs*
Labores augentur diſcipulis	*Labour is increaſed to the Maſter*
Juga promuntur tauris	*A yoke ſhall be brought out for cows*
Pecunia numeratur Diacono	*I will number the ounces to the Biſhop*
Carcer fundatur furibus	*We do found a priſon for a thief*
Crux ponitur latronibus	*We ſet up a croſs for a robber*
Orcus paratur adulteris	*God founded hell for an adulterer*

743. *N. B.* 1. To *is oft left out in Engliſh as eaſily underſtood:* as

Give me the cup, for *to me*	*You anſwer him nothing*
I ſent the Doctor a guinea	*I wrote you a letter*
We have caught you a bird, i. *for you*	*I will tell the Maſter this*

744. N. B. 2. *Theſe following have a* Dative, *though the Engliſh of them ſeems to be* Tranſitive, *becauſe* To *cannot be well ſupplied.*

Civitas credit Magiſtratibus	*Magiſtrates believe the Citizens*
Magiſtratūs fidunt Civitati	*Cities truſt the Magiſtrates*
Eccleſia favet Epiſcopo	*The Biſhops favour the Churches*
Mundus ſtudet litibus	*The Village ſtudies ſtrife*
Gelu nocet ſpicis	*Winds hurt the corn*
Herba medetur morbo	*Herbs will heal diſeaſes*
Tribūs non obediunt legi	*The people obeys the King*
Petrus voluit Jeſum parcere ſibi	*Men ſpare children*

745. N. B.

745. N. B. 3. *The Interjections* En, Ecce, Hem, Hei, Væ, *are ſometimes put* Acquiſitively *for Verbs with their Nominative, and have a Dative Caſe.*

Hem tibi Petrum	Hei mihi	*Lo a ſtable for horſes*
En altaria ſoli	Væ vobis	*Behold a den for lions*
Ecce fanum Lunæ	*Here's John for you*	*Alas for us*

§ VIII. The Eighth Phraſe.

Q. *What is the* Eighth Phraſe *to expreſs?*

746. *A.* The *Eighth Phraſe* is to expreſs that one thing is the thing of another: as, The book of the Maſter.

Q. *Which are the two words related to each other in this Phraſe?*

747. *A.* The Firſt is a Subſtantive of any Caſe as ſet down by any of the former Rules.

The Second is alſo a Subſtantive of the Genitive caſe, telling *who's* or *of what* the other thing is

N. B. *In Engliſh either we put the Preposition* Of *before the latter Subſtantive by the* Sixth Phraſe, *or put* es *or 's after it, and ſet it before the other: as,* The book of the Maſter, *or,* The Maſter's book: The peace of the Church, *or,* The Churches peace.

But in Latine the Genitive Caſe is deſigned to ſignify the ſame.

Q. *Give me ſome Exemples of the* Eighth Phraſe.

748. *A.* ——

I. Exemples of the Eighth Phraſe.

A Genitive is thus added to the Subſtantive.

Of the Firſt Ph. O ſtella cœli. Heus fili Reginæ.
Of the Second Ph. Pars maris ſervet. Jecur beſtiarum voratur.
Of the Third Ph. Ego ſum membrum Chriſti. Tu es dux ſcholæ.
Of the Fourth Ph. An tu legiſti epiſtolas Pauli. Tu tenes caudam aſini.
Of the Sixth Ph. Canes cubant ad oſtium domūs. Ros ſtat in vertice roſæ.
Of the Seventh Ph. Nos damus gloriam Domino mundi. Tu pare Regi regum.

Q. *Now give me the Rule to direct me to make the like.*

749. *A.* ——

II. The Rule of the Eighth Phraſe.

To ſhew a thing to be the thing Of another thing.

I. Put down a Subſtantive according to the former Rules.

II. Add to it the ſecond Subſtantive in the Genitive Caſe.

Or,

Or, When two Subſtantives come together, the latter ſhall be in the Genitive Caſe, if the one ſignify the thing of the other.

Q. *What doth this Rule add to what I have learned before?*
750. *A.* To put to a former Subſtantive another in the Genitive Caſe.

Q. *Give me ſome matter for Imitations.*
751. *A.* ——

III. Imitations of the Eighth Phraſe.

1. *A Genitive put to the Subſtantive of the Firſt Phraſe.*

O duces turmarum cur vos rumpitis fœdus pacis
O cuſtodes fœderis cur vos quæritis ſpolia belli
O cives Londini cur vos petitis titulos honoris

O tongues of Angels praiſe ye the Lord of the Heavens
O Sons of the Church avoid ye quarrels of wars
O Princes of the earth dread ye the King of Princes

2. *Of the Second Phraſe.*

Cura juris dĕcet hominem	*The care of works adorns the mind*
Preces fidei valent apud Deum	*The prayers of hope drive away ſorrow*
Metus culpæ nutrit ſpem	*The fears of a crime keep the ſoul*

3. *Of the Third Phraſe.*

Robur eſt cauſa ſalūtis	*Health will be the cauſe of ſtrength*
Nomen eſt ſignum rei	*Words are the names of things*
Horæ ſunt partes diēi	*A day is a part of a month*

4. *Of the Fourth Phraſe.*

Veſĭca capit humorem corporis	*Bladders hold the humours of bodies*
Mors tollit gaudia ſensûs	*Joys take away the dread of death*
Naſus non fert odorem ſtercŏris	*Dung offends the ſenſe of the noſe*
Palatum ſentit ſaporem fellis	*The dug hath plenty of milk*

5. *Of the Sixth Phraſe.*

Ego accuſo te de crimine luxus	*Thou accuſeſt me of the crime of anger*
Cryſtalli lucent in angulo ſpecûs	*A cryſtal ſhone in the corners of a cave*
Adamas micat inter lapides litŏris	*Diamants glitter among jewels of the crown*
Gemmæ latent intra glebas terræ	*Stones lie within the entrals of hills*
Lac manat per venas uberis	*Urine trickles through the neck of the bladder*
Sudor fluit per canales cutis	*Blood will flow through a vein of the foot*

6. *Of*

6. Of the Seventh Phraſe.

Rex dat ſtipem cuſtodi palatii	*The Mr. gives hire to the keepers of the ſtable*
Tu ne fide auxilio hoſtis	*We do not truſt to the threats of a fly*
Tu noli credere nunciis vulgi	*I do believe the rumours of the town*
Tu dic laudes Domino ætheris	*Sing thou praiſe to the Lord of life*

752. *N. B.* 1. Seldom the Verb Infinite is the Genitive Caſe: as

Tempus eſt ſolvere colla equorum	*It is not time to looſe the ſchool*
Eſt tibi ſtudium tueri arcem	*We have a deſire to ſow the garden*

753. *N. B.* 2. But moſtly the Genit. of the Gerund in *Dum* is thus put: as

Amor habendi mel urget apes	*The love of ſtudying urges on the boy.*
Eſt nobis deſiderium regnandi	*Ye cheriſh the deſire of drinking*
Odium diſcendi cepit vos	*Boys ſhow an hatred of knowing*
Tu facito finem ludendi	*The end of ſinning is death*
Nunquam fuit mihi otium ſcribendi	*Is there not leiſure to plant?*
Ego novi modum amiciendi me	*Thou knoweſt the mode of painting*

§ IX. The Ninth Phraſe.

Q. *Which is the ninth motion to be made towards making a Sentence?*

754. *A.* Sometimes the Subſtantive in the former Rules doth not ſufficiently expreſs the thing meant by it, and then there is need to add another Subſtantive which may more fully declare and explain it; and this is the *Ninth Phraſe.*

Q. *Which then are the two words of the* Ninth Phraſe?

755. *A.* The Firſt is a Subſtantive ſet down by one of the former Rules. The Second is another Subſtantive denoting the ſame thing added to it.

Q. *Give me ſome* Exemples *to make this plain?*

756. *A.* ——

I. Exemples of the Ninth Phraſe.

Where a ſecond Subſtantive is added to the Subſtantive.

Of the Firſt Ph. O Rex Carole. *He that calls the King calls Charles.*
Of the Second Ph. Rex Carolus regnat. *If the King reigns Charles reigns.*
Of the Third Ph. Ille eſt Rex Carolus. *If he be King he is Charles.*
Of the Fourth Ph. Amo Regem Carolum. *If I love the King I love Charles.*
Of the Sixth Ph. Ego loquor de Rege Carolo. *If I ſpeak of the King I ſpeak of Charles.*

Of

Of the Seventh Ph. Tu pare Regi Carolo. *If you obey the King you obey Charles.*
Of the Eighth Ph. Ego vidi thronum Regis Caroli. *The throne of the King is the throne of Charles.*

And therefore the latter Subſtantive is ſtill put in the ſame Caſe that the former was in. N. B. *So that the firſt Subſtantive's right Caſe muſt be known before this Phraſe can be uſed*; and therefore this *Phraſe* is the *Ninth.*

Q. *Give me the* Rule *of the* Ninth Phraſe.
757. *A.* ——

II. The Rule of the Ninth Phraſe.

To ſhew what thing a thing is.
I. Set down the firſt Subſtantive according as the former Rules direct.
II. Put to it another Subſtantive denoting the ſame thing in the ſame Caſe.

Or, Two Subſtantives denoting one thing ſhall be put both in one Caſe.

Q. *Give me ſome* Imitations.
758. *A.* ——

III. Imitations of the Ninth Phraſe.

1. O Domine Deus tu bea eccleſiam	*O father Adam regard thou God*
O Jeſu Chriſte tu fove populum	*O wife Eve follow thou vertue*
O pueri diſcipuli vos precamini	*O ſiſter Mary avoid thou a fault*
2. Dominus Magiſter vetat garrire	*The Gent. the Miſtris forbid to rove*
Domina Hera vellit piſa	*The Ladies the Miſtreſſes pluck roſes*
Anna virgo pangit vites	*The maids the girls plant a vine*
3. Malus eſt arbor	*Apple-trees are trees*
Ador putatur far	*Salt is thought a mineral*
Canna vocatur ſcipio	*Staffs are called canes*

N. B. *And here you ſee the reaſon why in the* Third Phraſe *the* ſecond Subſtantive *is put into the ſame Caſe with the* firſt, *becauſe* one *is ſaid to be* the other.

4. Ego legebam Paulum Apoſtolum	*I was hearing Henry the Biſhop*
Tu ſeris granum ſemen frugis	*We ſow grains the ſeeds of wheat*
Vos cavete verbera præmia ſceleris	*Seek ye glory the reward of labour*
6. Tu rogas de bibliis lege vitæ	*We ſpeak of the bible the word of God*
Angeli ducunt in cœlum locum gloriæ	*Caſt an eye to the ſky the place of ſtars*
Tu cave à Diabolo hoſte animæ	*Beware ye of fiends the enemies of men*

7. Tu funde preces Deo Regi	*Thou gaveſt a gift to the Lord Judge*
Ego miſi munera Joanni fratri	*Spare thou the ſoul the temple of God*
Nos obedimus verbo legi Dei	*Obey thou Biſhops the ſervants of Chriſt*
8. Maria fuit filia Regis Henrici	*Charles was the ſon of King Charles*
Cives ſunt columnæ urbis Londini	*Loe the end of vices the diſeaſes of ſouls!*
Nos audivimus jocos Thomæ Coqui.	*We admire the ſong of Will the Smith*

§ X. The Tenth Phraſe.

Q. *What is the* Tenth Phraſe?

759. *A.* When we are to expreſs that the thing mentioned by any *Subſtantive* of the foregoing Rules is ſuch or ſuch then we put to it an *Adjective*; as, *a man is* good *or* bad, wiſe *or* fooliſh, and this is the *Tenth Phraſe*.

Q. *Which then are the two words of the* Tenth Phraſe?

760. *A.* The Firſt is a Subſtantive of any Caſe put by a former Rule. The Second is an Adjective added to that Subſtantive.

Q. *Give me ſome* Exemples *of this.*

761. *A.*——

I. Exemples of the Tenth Phraſe.

Where an Adjective is joyned to the Subſtantive of

1. *Ph.* *Sing.*	O Domine bone O Domina bona O pomum bonum	*Plur.* O Domini bon O Dominæ bonæ O poma bona.
2. *Ph.*	Dominus bonus amatur. Domina bona laudatur. Pomum bonum voratur.	Domini boni coluntur. Dominæ bonæ quæruntur. Poma bona eduntur.
4. *Ph.*	Ego optavi Dominum bonum Tu ſperaviſti Dominam bonam Mus quæſivit pomum bonum	Ego invito Dominos bonos. Tu vocas Dominas bonas Simia quærit poma bona.
6. *Ph.* Quis vult	mori pro Domino bono lugere cum Domina bona prandere ſine pomo bono	Nemo queritur de Dominis bonis Ædes ornantur à Dominis bonis Corpora aluntur à pomis bonis.
7. *Ph.*	Ego placeo Domino bono Tu noces Dominæ bonæ Natura dat ſaporem pomo bono	Quis nolit cedere Dominis bonis Tu deles maculas Dominis bonis Dentes non parcunt pomis bonis.

8. *Ph.* Ego credo verbis Domini boni
Tu verris pallam Dominæ bonæ
Naſus ſentit odorem pomi boni
Non eſt { Dominorum bonorum, nobis { Dominarum bonarum copia { pomorum bonorum.

N. B. *Where all along you ſee the* Adject. *is put into the ſame* Gender *and the ſame* Caſe, *and the ſame* Number *that the* Subſtantive *is of.*

2. *Therefore the Rule of the* Adject. *is not to be taught till the right* Caſe *of the* Subſt. *be known, and that was not before now.*

Q. *Give me the Rule of the Tenth Phraſe.*
762. *A.* ——

II. The Rule of the Tenth Phraſe.

To ſhew a thing to be ſuch or ſuch,
I. Put down the Subſt. name of that thing by the former Rules.
II. And to it add the Adj. in the ſame Caſe, ſame Gender and Number.
Or, The Adjective, whether it be a Noun, Pronoun or Participle, ſhall agree with its Subſtantive in Caſe, Gender and Number.

Q. *Give me ſome Imitations for exerciſe.*
763. *A.* ——

III. Imitations of the Tenth Phraſe.

I. Of Nouns Adjective.

O Deus æterne tu ſemper manes — *O eternal Angels ye ever abide*
O ſpiritus fœde tu ſolos mentiri — *O foul Spirits ye uſe to deceive*
O fortuna mala tu lædis homines. — *O evil fiends ye hurt ſouls.*

O diræ curæ vos angitis animos — *O direfull care thou vexeſt the mind*
O omnes nationes ne eſte fatuæ — *O every Nation fear thou wars*
O fidera clara vos eſtis lampades cœli. — *O clear conſtellation do thou ſhine.*

Pater probus gignit filium pravum — *A naughty ſon vexeth a good father*
Aura lenis non ſternit avenam — *Gentle gales move ears of corn*
Puella pulchra nubit viro ſpurco. — *Fair maids marry to naſty men.*

Homines juvenes ſpernunt ſenes — *An old man ſcorneth a young man*
Caligo obſcura velat jubar ſolis — *A beam of the ſun driveth obſcure dusk*
Pruina cana tegit latos campos. — *Hoary froſts cover a broad field.*

N. B. *Sometimes there comes a Verb between them, and ſtill they agree.*

Cera ſuevit eſſe flava — *Lions are born tawny*
Sepia ſolet eſſe nigra — *We ſee that ink is black*
Papyrus debet eſſe alba — *We know that paper ought to be white*
Crines rufi non fiunt atri — *Black hair becomes not red*

Tetæ

Teter odor non fit ſuavis
Mel ſincerum erit dulce
Fel merum erit amarum
Immaturæ olivæ ſunt acerbæ
Sonus fiſtulæ eſt ſonorus
Voces ranarum ſunt raucæ
Alea habetur ludus impius
Filum novum ſarcit pannum veterem
Linea recta ſecat lineam curvam
Res dubiæ movent mentem fortem
Arcus jacit ſagittam uncam
Sclopus pellit pilam gravem
Lucta longa negat tibi quietem
Siccum ſolum habet glebas duras
Tranquillum mare dat viam navi
Strenuus miles haud meruit necem
Frons blanda arguit gaudium
Oculi truces arguunt famem
Fames pungit alvum jejunam
Caro cruda non eſt ſalubris
Ingentes ignes urunt pedes
Solus homo eſt animal nudum
Leo fulvus habet vim miram
Crumena fit ex corio hirſuto
Caput calvum monſtrat pellem glabram
Rumor vanus turbat civitatem
Ulcus putre fœtet
Ego cerno ærem eſſe ſerenum
Tu ais aquam eſſe limpidam
Pera parva non eſt onus magnum
Opes nimiæ rumpunt ſomnos
Q. Quot ſunt res in natura rerum?
R. Unus eſt maximus Deus
Sexus animalium ſunt duo
Tres ſunt teſtes in Cœlo alto
Partes anni ſunt quatuor
Sensûs animalis ſunt quinque
Pennæ ſunt ſex in una ala
Stellæ vagæ numerantur ſeptem
Radii in ſcala fuerunt octo
Coſtæ in latere ſunt novem
Rugæ ſunt decem in facie anûs
Cors ceperat viginti phaſianos
Centum anni dicuntur ſeculum
Iris ſpargit mille colores

Stinking ſmells become not ſweet
The taſte of pure honey is ſweet
The tongue feels gall to be bitter
A ripe olive is not harſh
The ſounds of drums are loud
The voice of a frog is hoarſe
Shun the graceleſs play of dice
New threads patch old cloths
A crooked line cuts a ſtrait line
A dubious matter moves ſtout minds
Bows will caſt hooked arrows
Guns will ſend forth heavy bullets
Long quiet brings ſweet ſleep
Hard clods are in a dry ground
The ſhip runs in a calm ſea
Death frights not a brave ſouldier
Joy makes a blith forehead
A ſurly eye ſhews fierce anger
Hungry paunches raiſe deſire
I find that raw fleſh is not wholeſome
A huge fire will burn the face
Onely men are naked animals
There is wonderfull force in a tawny lion
Diner is carried in an hairy purſe
Bald heads ſhew bare skins

Vain rumours trouble cities
Rotten ulcers ſtink
The Skie will be clear by and by
Ye ſay that the waters are clear
Small pouches are not great burthens
Men deſire too great means
Q. *How many things are there here?*
A. *There is one Queen in a Kingdom*
The parts of the bible are two
The King governs three Kingdoms
The ſides of a Church are four
There are five fingers in one hand
Three birds have ſix wings
There were ſeven candles in the temple
Eight ladders are in the houſe
The bones in the leg are nine
An Ape's buttock hath ten wrinkles
Twenty Pheſans live in a coop
An age holds an hundred years
Rainbows are things of 1000 colours

Ambæ manus jam ſunt laſſæ	*Both feet are now tired*
Mons eſt collis grandis ponderis	*Heavy is the weight of a big mount*
Leo eſt rex beſtiarum ferarum	*A ſheep is the meat of a wild beaſt*
Q. Quotus diſcipulus es tu?	Q. *Of what number am I?*
R. Ego ſum diſcipulus primus	A. *Thou art the firſt girl*
Q. Quoti ſunt cæteri pueri?	Q. *What are the other girls?*
R. Joannes eſt ſecundus	A. *Martha ought to be ſecond*
Robertus heri erat tertius	*Betty deſerves to be third*
Ego puto Thomam eſſe quartum	*I judge that Joan is fourth*
Aiunt Davidem fuiſſe quintum	*They ſay that Hannah was fifth*
Maria eſt filia ſexta	*Rebecca is numbred the ſixth*
Filius ſeptimus medetur morbis	*A ſeventh daughter tries to heal*
Lacus rigebit ante diem octavum	*Showers will fall before the eighth morn*
Nona hora invitat ad jentaculum	*Breakfaſts are taken at the ninth hour*
Ego legi decimum caput Lucæ	*Thou readeſt Luke in the tenth Chapter*
Tu ſedes medius inter parentes	*Two girls ſit midmoſt between us*
Singulæ oves pariunt geminos agnos.	*Single hawes bring twin young-ones.*

N. B. When in Engliſh we by this Rule uſe an Adjective with am, the Latins oft expreſs both by one Verb; as

I am able	Ego poſſum	*I am well ſtrong*	Ego valeo	See the
I am cold	Ego frigeo	*I am ſilent*	Ego ſileo	Verbs
I am hot	Ego caleo	*I am glad*	Ego gaudeo	Neuter.
I am clear	Ego liqueo	*I am ſad*	Ego mœreo	

764. § II. The Pronouns Adjective.

Quis homo poteſt ſecare cotem?	*What knives can cut whetſtones?*
Quæ fœmina elixat ſilices?	*Which women boil pumices?*
Quod lignum rumpit corticem?	*What woods burſt the rinds?*
Ille *or* is *or* iſte locus eſt profanus	*Thoſe places are profane*
Illa *or* ea *or* iſta materia eſt craſſa	*It's clear that that matter is thick*
Illud *or* id *or* iſtud fanum eſt ſacrum	*Thoſe temples are holy*
Ipſe Magiſter poſuit eſcam columbo	*Maſters themſelves lay baits for doves*
Hic pediculus non eſt gracilis	*This ſtock is not thick*
Hæc charta non eſt pura	*Theſe papers are not pure*
Hoc folium non eſt recens	*Theſe leaves are not freſh*
Idem folium habet florem album	*The ſame leaves have white flowers*
Quædam ſpatia ſunt anguſta	*Some bounds are narrow*
Alii termini ſunt ampli	*Other ſpaces are large*
In hac ſtirpe non eſt frons ulla	*In theſe ſtocks there are not any leaves*
Nullum eſt mendum in toto opere	*There are no works without blemiſhes*
Q. Utram genam cupis fricare?	*Which hand do ye deſire to ſcratch?*
R. Neutra gena eſt ſaucia	*Neither hand hath been ſound*
Altera gena erit fricanda	*I ſee the other hand wounded*

Q. Cujus est hic culter?	*Whose knives judge ye these to be?*
R. Tu scis hunc cultrum esse meum	*I think that that ax is mine*
Illa ascia non potest esse tua	*All those knives are yours*
Petrus ait eam serram esse suam	*James swears that these saws are his*
Multi sacci jacent in mola nostra	*Many a sack filleth our mill*
Paucæ stant cedri in nemore vestro	*One cedar grows in all your forests*
Omnes naves habent carinas suas	*All bellies have their own entrails*
Q. Cujas erat Abrahamus?	Q. *What countrymen are ye?*
R. Abrahamus erat nostras	A. *We are all your countrymen*
Jacobus dicit se esse vestrātem	*Dorothy saith that she is ours.*

765. § III. The Participles Adjective.

1. In *ans*, *ens* or *iens*, being or doing.

Pater amans habet amantem filium	*Loving fathers have loving sons*
In funere fiebant rogi ardentes	*A burning pile is made at funerals*
Nos audivimus magistrum docentem	*The Master saw us learning.*

2. In *andus*, *endus* or *iendus*, To be done, That ought to be done.

Bonus puer est laudandus	*Good girls are to be praised*
Tu negas pulicem esse prendendum	*I deny that moles are to be caught*
Probrum non est morte luendum	*Faults are to be washt off by punishment.*

3. In *urus*, about to be or about to doe.

Ego sum iturus in scholam	*We are about to go into the town*
Nos sumus pransuri apud te	*Te are to sup with me*
Tu ais hiemem esse venturam	*They say that the summer is to come.*

4. In *tus*, *sus* or *xus*. In English in ɪ, t, or ʊ, Done already, or being done, or having done, or having been done.

Homo doctus terit multos libros	*Learned men wear away a book*
Epistola lecta ponitur in sinu	*Letters being read are kept in chests*
Lyra audita solatur animum.	*The sound of harps heard is sweet.*

766. *How to make the Verb in* i *signifie Perfectly.* See 452.

N. B. To make a Verb in *i* to signifie Perfectly you must use the Participle in *tus*, *sus* or *xus*, with the Verb *esse*, as

Amari *to be loved*,	amatus esse *or* fuisse *to have been loved.*
Doceri *to be taught*,	doctus esse *or* fuisse *to have been taught.*
Legi *to be read*,	lectus esse *or* fuisse *to have been read.*
Audiri *to be heard*,	audītus esse *or* fuisse *to have been heard.*

Præter Perfect Tenſe.		Præter plup. Tenſe.
Ego amatus ſum	*I have been liked*	Ego habitus eram
Tu probatus es	*Thou haſt been eſteemed*	Tu doctus eras
Arbor plantata eſt	*A furrow has been plowed*	Litera ſecta erat
Nos æſtimati ſumus	*We have been loved*	Nos viſi eramus
Vos laniati eſtis	*Ye have been planted*	Vos capti eratis
Sulci arati ſunt	*Trees have been torn*	Templa ſtructa erant
Ego raptus fui	*I have been born*	Ego doctus fueram
Tu territus fuiſti	*Thou haſt been ſought*	*Thou hadſt been read*
Flagrum factum fuit	*A lock has been ſhut*	*A Church had been built*
Nos nati fuimus	*We have been frighted*	*We had been taken*
Vos petiti fuiſtis	*Ye have been ſnatched*	*Ye had been ſeen*
Seræ clauſæ fuerunt	*Whips have been made*	*Letters had been read.*

Future Perf. Ego amatus ero vel fuero *I ſhall have been loved*, &c.

767. So in Verbs Deponents ſignifying Actively.

Loqui *to ſpeak*, Locutus eſſe *or* fuiſſe *to have or had ſpoken*
Labi *to ſlip*, Lapſus eſſe *or* fuiſſe *to have or had ſlipt*
Mirari *to wonder*, Miratus eſſe *or* fuiſſe *to have or had wondred.*

Preter Perfect.		Præt. pluperf.
Ego locutus ſum	*I have endeavoured*	Ego greſſus fueram
Tu miratus es	*Thou haſt ſlipped*	Tu miſſus fueras
Coquus mentitus eſt	*The Sun has riſen*	Miniſter meditatus fuerat
Nos lapſi ſumus	*We have lyed*	Nos opinati fueramus
Vos conati eſtis	*Ye have wondred*	Vos faſſi fueratis
Stellæ ortæ ſunt	*Apes have ſpoken*	Epiſcopi precati fuerant.

§ XI. The Eleventh Phraſe.

Q. *Which is the Eleventh Phraſe?*

768. *A.* As Adv. and Prep. are joyned to Verbs by the V. Phraſe, ſo may they be to Adject. Subſt. or Adverbs, as *A man very good.*

Q. *Which are the two Words in this Phraſe?*

769. *A.* The I. is an Adj. or Subſt. or Adverb ſet down by the former Rules, the II. is an Adverb or Præpoſ. added to it.

N. B. So that all that you learn by the XI. Phraſe is to put an Adverb or Præpoſ. to ſome word going before.

770. I. Exem-

770. I. Exemples of the Eleventh Phraſe.

Salix eſt arbor haud procēra
Senes ſunt bis pueri
Tu nactus es uxorem vix ſanam
Nemo vivit liber à curis.

771. II. The Rule of the Eleventh Phraſe.

As Adverbs and Præpoſitions are joyned to Verbs, ſo are they to Adjectives Subſtantives and Adverbs.

772. III. Imitations of the Eleventh Phraſe.

Pauci pueri ſunt ſemper gnavi	*Few wives are always mild*
Omnes fere ſunt ignavi	*Almoſt all Churches are large*
Tu habes fratrem vix virum	*Thy ſiſter is ſcarce a woman*
Bos jacet feſſus de v'a.	*Be not cruel towards any animal*
Noli cubare pronus in faciem	*Dogs are fierce againſt bears*
Quercus ſtat procul à ſtabulo	*The ſtable ſtood far from the oak*
Nebula oritur prope ad palūdem	*Miſts ariſe nigh to the moors.*

---

§ XII. The Twelfth Phraſe.

Q. *Let us ſee now the twelfth ſtep towards making a ſentence.*

773. *A.* The Twelfth Phraſe is juſt like the Seventh, and is uſed when we are to expreſs that a thing is ſuch or ſuch, to or for any thing, as, *A child is* dear to *the father. Learning is* uſefull to *boys.*

Q. *Which are the two Words in the Twelfth Phraſe?*

774. *A.* The I. is an Adject ſet down by the Tenth Rule; the II. is a Subſt. of the Dative Caſe added to it.

Q. *What doth this teach more than I knew before?*

A. Onely to put a Dative after an Adjective put Acquiſitively.

775. I. Exemples of the Twelfth Phraſe.

Puer eſt charus parenti	Hordeum habetur gratum ſuibus
Literæ ſunt utiles pueris	Piper eſt acre palato
Stultus vir non eſt idoneus agro	Labores ſunt moleſti corpori.

776. II. The Rule of the Twelfth Phrase.

When you expreſs that a thing is *ſuch* or *ſuch*, *to* or *for* another,
I. Put down the Adject. according to the tenth Rule.
II. Put to it the Subſt. name of that thing in the Dative Caſe.
Or, Adjectives that betoken profit or diſprofit, likeneſs or unlikeneſs, *&c.* require a Dative Caſe.

777. III. Imitations of the Twelfth Phrase.

Chriſtus eſt bonus animæ piæ	*Fiends are not good to men*
Jeſus erit ſimilis amanti patri	*Devils are like to roaring lions*
Vir pius non eſt diſſimilis filio	*They are not unlike to fierce ſerpents*
Sapiens mulier non eſt gravis viro	*Wiſe husbands are not grievous to wives*
Pumex videtur par marmŏri	*Marbles are equal to pumices*
Sapphirus non eſt impar rubino	*Rubies are unequal to ſapphires*
Libra eſt par duodecim unciis	*Twelve ounces are equal to a pound*
Tuſſis non eſt levis pueris	*The plague is no light thing to us*
Sævi viri ſunt mites nemini	*A mild man is cruel to none*
Tu emiſti ocreas aptas pedibus	*I have a ſcabbard fit for the ſword*
Tu eſto comis cunctis diſcipulis	*Be ye courteous to your enemies*
Maria ſerva fuit fida domino	*Men ſhould be faithfull to their Lords*
Famuli ſunt fere infidi heris	*Maids are oft unfaithfull to Ladies*
An tu puras hoſtem amicum hoſti	*Can enemies be friendly to enemies?*
Liquet Satanam eſſe inimicum nobis	*'Tis clear that thou art unfriendly to me*
Publica res eſt communis omnibus	*Publick things are common to each one*
Rex habet hortum proprium ſibi	*Kings have thrones proper to them.*

§. XIII. The Thirteenth Phrase.

Q. *What is the Thirteenth and laſt Phraſe?*
778. *A.* The Thirteenth Phraſe is like the Eighth, and is when an Adject. hath after it a Genitive Caſe; as, A man *greedy of money.*
Q. *Which then are the two Words related to one another here?*
779. *A.* The I. is an Adject. ſet down by the Tenth Rule.
The II. is a Subſt. of the Genitive Caſe put to it, as,

780. I. Exemples of the Thirteenth Phrase.

Milites debent eſſe gnari armorum	Tu es impos mentis
Pupus eſt ignārus omnium rerum	Hic puer eſt rudis literarum.

Q. *What*

Q. *What Adjectives are they that govern a Genitive Caſe?*

781. *A.* Not all Adjectives have a Gen. Caſe but onely thoſe that ſignify,

1. { *Able, as* potis, compos, potens, *Able.* Patiens *able to bear.*
   { or *Unable*, as impos, impotens, *unable.* Impatiens *unable to bear.*

2. { *Knowing*, as Certus, doctus, peritus, *skilfull.* Memor *mindfull.*
   { or *Ignorant*, as Incertus, indoctus, imperitus, immemor, rudis.

3. { *Deſirous*, as amans, avārus, avīdus, *greedy.* Cupīdus *covetous.*
   { or *Regardleſs*, as largus, negligens, *negligent.* Prodigus *prodigal.*

Q. *Now give me the* Rule *of the Thirteenth Phraſe.*

782. II. The Rule of the Thirteenth Phraſe.

To declare that { Able / or Unable } { Knowing / or Ignorant } { Deſirous / or Regardleſs } of any thing is.

I. Put down the Adjective according to the Tenth Phraſe,
And II. To it put the Subſt. in the Genitive Caſe

Or, *Adiectives that ſignify* Deſire, Knowledge, Remembrance, Ignorance, *and ſuch like, require a Genitive Caſe.*

783. III. Imitations of the Thirteenth Phraſe.

Vir ebrius non eſt compos mentis	*Sober men are maſters of themſelves*
Mulier laſciva eſt impos animi	*Wanton women are not miſtreſſes of their heart*
Verus Deus eſt potens ventorum	*Falſe Gods have not power of thunder*
Sævi heri ſunt impotentes iræ	*Fooliſh mothers can't manage their love*
Tua filia eſt certa nubendi	*No man can be ſure of living*
Ego video te eſſe doctum pilæ	*Boys ought not to be skill'd at dice*
Duces debent eſſe periti belli	*The Maſter is a skilfull uſer of the harp*
Nos debemus vivere memŏres mortis	*Ye ought to be mindfull of virtue*
Homines vivunt immemores officii	*Be not unmindfull of the laſt hour*
Hic puer eſt rudis literarum	*Prieſts are not ignorant of the bible*
Vir amans vini eſt prodigus nummi	*Men lovers of ale are laviſh of gold*
Tu es cupidus novarum rerum	*Ye are covetous of little things*
Puer avidus laudis eſt amandus.	*Judges greedy of rewards are unjuſt.*

Mr. And thus you have ſeen the Thirteen Phraſes and their Rules, by which Words are put rightly together to make Sentences.

Sch. *Are theſe Thirteen ſufficient to guide one in making any ſentence?*

784. *A.* They are ſufficient, and comprehend all the ways of putting words to words aright in the Latin Tongue. Onely obſerve,

785. *N. B.*

785. *N. B.* That ſome Verbs Neuter and Paſſive, and ſome Adjectives, have after them a Verb Infinite not yet accounted for, as,

Ego videor videre ſtellam cadentem	*We ſeem to hear trumpets ſounding*
Tympanum dicitur dare ſonum	*Drums are ſaid to make a noiſe.*
Quis homo poteſt arcere fulgura	*We cannot feel ſpirits*
Pueri gaudent tangere fræna	*Girls rejoice to trim up the head*
Luſcinia eſt ſemper parata cancre	*The raven is prepared to eat*
Natura noſtra eſt prona labi	*Men are prone to ſin*
Senes non putantur apti regi	*Young men are apt to be deceived.*

But of theſe an account ſhall be given in the next book.

CHAP. XVII.

Three ſorts of Simple Sentences.

Q. *How many of theſe Phraſes go to make one Sentence?*

786. *A.* Sometimes one; as, Ego ſto. Tu cubas. Supellex emitur.
2. Sometimes two; as, O Thoma tu garris. Homo portat ſarcinam.
3. Sometimes three; as, O Jeſu, tu ſerva nos. Magnum epulum fit nobis.
4. Sometimes four; as Tela noſtra habent mucronem levem.
5. Sometimes 5. as, Nanus homo vix implevit ventrem exilem.
6. Sometimes 6. as, Cuncta familia non poteſt dormire in uno lecto.
7. Sometimes 7. as, Integra poma non vorantur ab hominibus ſanæ mentis.
8. Sometimes 8. as, Eccleſia exercitus Jeſu Chriſti debet pugnare contra hoſtem Diabolum, &c.

Q. *How many ſorts of Sentences are there?*

787. *A.* A Sentence is either ſingle or compounded.

Q. *What is a ſingle or ſimple Sentence?*

788. *A.* That which hath but one Verb finite in it, as,

Man's age is ſhort	*Man's age is not ſhort*
Ætas hominis eſt brevis	Ætas hominis non eſt brevis
Follow thou the guide	*Follow not thou the guide*
Tu ſequĕre ducem	Tu ne ſequere ducem
What man condemns himſelf?	*What man condemns not himſelf?*
Quis homo damnat ſeipſum?	Quis homo non damnat ſeipſum?

789. N. B. *Where you ſee,* I. *That every ſingle Sentence is either* Affirmative, *as* Age *is* ſhort; *or* Negative, *as* Age *is not* ſhort.

II. *That the* Engliſh *put their Negative Particle* Not, *after the Verb Finite, but the* Latins *put theirs,* non, haud, ne, *before it.*

Q. *How many ſorts of ſimple Sentences are there?*

790. *A.*

790. *A.* Of ſimple Sentences there be three ſorts: 1. An *Interrogative* Sentence. 2. An *Aſſertive* Sentence. 3. An *Imperative* Sentence.

Q. *What is an Interrogative Sentence?*

791. *A.* An Interrogative Sentence is that by which a Queſt. is asked, as.

Quid eſt ſquama?	*What are the gills of a fiſh?*
Quem hominem vocas tu?	*Which horſe can you manage?*
Quot ſunt branchiæ in piſce?	*How many ſcales cover the fiſh?*
Quale inſtrumentum eſt fiſtula?	*What inſtruments are pipes?*
An Pater tuus venit in urbem?	*Whether is you ſiſter gone to Church?*
Num vos cupitis adire rus?	*What? doſt thou deſire to learn?*

Q. *What is an Aſſertive Sentence?*

792. *A.* An Aſſertive Sentence is that wherein it is aſſerted that ſomewhat *is*, or *is not*, *doth* or *doth not*, *ſuffers* or *ſuffers not*, as,

Peſſulus latet pone ſeram	*The lock lies behind the bolt*
Fumus non eſt gratus oculis	*The eyes cannot bear ſmoke*
Æſtas venit ante autumnum	*Autumn will come after ſummer*
Scrupi non ſeruntur pro ſemine	*Men ſow not pibbles for ſeeds.*

Q. *What is an Imperative Sentence?*

793. *A.* An Imperative Sentence is that wherein it *is laid* upon ſomewhat *to be*, or *not to be*; *to do*, or *not to do*, *&c.* as,

Tu eſto vir ſobrius	*Be ye ſober men*
Vos ne eſte atroces	*Be not thou a ſtern girl*
Puer ſervato ſe caſtum	*Let a woman keep her ſelf chaſte*
Carnes aſſantor	*Let a ſparrow be roſted.*

794. N. B. I. *Interrogative and Aſſertive Sentences are made by the* Indic. Mood; *but Imperative Sentences are made by the* Imperative.

795. II. *In Interrogative and Imperative Sentences the* Engliſh *ſet the Nom. Caſe after the Verb Finite, but the* Latins *either* before *or* after.

796. III. *Interrogative and Aſſertive Sentences are denyed by* non, haud, &c. *but Imperative by* ne.

797. IV. Interrogative Sentences have this mark (?) written after them, and aſſertive and Imperative this (.) See all this in the former Exemples.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Compounded Double Sentences.

Q. *What is a Compounded Sentence?*

798. *A.* When two ſingle Sentences are joyned together by ſome Cople or Tye they are called a compound Sentence.

So

So then in a Compound Sentence there is,
I. One ſingle Sentence, as, *Life is ſhort.*
II. Another ſingle Sentence after it, as, *Art is long.*
III. Between theſe two a Cople is put to tye them together, as,

Life is ſhort, and *art is long.* *Life is ſhort*, but *art is long.*
Vita eſt brevis, et ars eſt longa. Vita eſt brevis, ſed ars eſt longa.

799. N. B. *After the firſt ſentence this mark* (,) *is to be written.*

Q. *What words may be the Copies to joyn two Sentences together?*
800. *A.* There are three ſorts of words which are *Copies.*
I. A Relative word, which rehearſeth and fetcheth over a foregoing Subſt. again; as, *Who, which, that*, Qui, quæ, quod.
II. A Comparative word whereby two things are compared together; as, Tantus, quantus; talis, qualis; tot, quot; tam, quam; ita, ut, &c.
III. A Conjunction; as, Et, que, quoque, ſed, vero, &c.
801. *N. B.* I. Sometimes there is in the firſt Sentence a Word relating to the Cople, and putting us in mind to expect it; as, *The life is ſhort*, and *art is long.*
Thus ille *relates to* qui, tantus *to* quantus, tam *to* quam, & *to* &, neque *to* neque, aut *to* aut, quamvis *to* tamen, *as you ſhall ſee.*
802. II. The natural place of the cople is between the two Sentences copled, and it is ſeldom removed thence; but,
1. *Quidem* is ſet after the firſt word of the firſt ſentence.
2. *Quoque, autem, vero, enim*, after the firſt word of the ſecond Sentence.
3. *Que, ne* and *ve* are moreover adjoyned to that firſt word, as you ſhall ſee.

803. I. Exemples wherein the Relative is the Cople.

Miſer eſt ille homo, qui homo jacet æger ſub ſepe
Wretched are the men, which men lye ſick under hedges. 2. Ph.
Felices ſunt mulieres, quas mulieres mœrores non premunt. 4. *Ph.*
Happy is that woman, which woman grief does not preſs.
Nos ferimus grana adoris, quæ grana aves vorant. 4. *Ph.*
Servants ſew the garments, which garments Kings put on.
Biblia ſunt liber Dei, præ quo libro cæteri libri debent ſperni. 6. *Ph.*
The Bible is the word of God, in which word we read our duty.
Aqua ſcatet per ſulcos, in quibus ſulcis ſegetes virent.
Waters flow in the field, through which field a crop grows.
Pueri fiunt hebẽtes, quibus pueris non licet ludere. 7. *Ph.*
The boy becomes dull, to which boy no play is given.
Matres ſunt lætæ, quarum matrum filii ſunt ſancti. 8. *Ph.*
The father is joyfull, which father's daughters are wiſe.
Vir datus eſt Mariæ, cujus viri nomen erat Joſephus.
A wife was given to Joſeph, which wife's name was Mary.

Judex

Judex non debet plectere homines, antequam peccaverint.
We cannot hear your words, before that you ſpeak them.
Hic annus eſt ſecundus, poſtquam nos cœpimus diſcere.
I ſhall think my ſelf wretched, after that you ſhall die.

804. Exemples of a **Comparative** Cople.

Tantus rex eſt Jacobus, *quantus* rex nemo fuit.
So big *men were the giants*, as ſo big *no body now is.*
Emi hodie *talem* equum, *qualem* equum tu nunquam vendidiſti.
I heard to day ſuch *a ſermon*, as *you never heard in your life.*
Tot erant Apoſtoli, *quot* erant Tribus Iſraelis.
So many *Miniſters ought to be*, as *there are Churches.*
Tam dulce eſt Saccharum, *quam* amarum eſt fel.
So *pious was Abel*, as *Cain was impious.*
Plures ſunt hic ignavi pueri, *quam* aliquis putaret.
There are more briſk girls here, than *you would think.*
Solomon fuit ſapientior, *quam* alii reges ſunt.
The giants were greater than *other men now are.*

805. Exemples where **Conjunctions** are Coples.

Viſne tu ſpuere, *an* non vis? *Will ye play*, or *will ye not?*
Siniſtra manus gerit ſcutum, *&* dextra manus tenet gladium.
Old men do die, and *young men get their riches.*
Vita noſtra fugit, horæque volant. *Time fleeth*, and *death cometh.*
Porci gerunt aſperas ſetas, oves *quoque* habent mollem lanam.
Hogs uſe to eat foul meats, *dogs* alſo *devour dead fleſh.*
Ego *neque* habeo fruſtum butyri, *neque* ego video micam panis.
Neither *have we a piece of cheeſe*, nor *have we a bit of fleſh.*
Faber *aut* forat lignum, *aut* parat inſtrumenta ſua.
Either *keep thou order in the ſchool*, or *leave the ſchool.*
Vel Magiſter doceto diſcipulos, *vel* diſcipuli linquunto Magiſtrum.
Vos *quidem* tenetis libros, *ſed* ego non ſentio vos legere.
Multi *quidem* ſunt falſi dii, *at* eſt unus verus Deus?
Many men indeed *are taught*, but *few men are learned.*
Herus legit, vos *vero* ludetis, *or* vos *autem* ludetis.
Ego cædo te, *quia* malus es, *We love you*, becauſe *ye are good.*
Non decet me ſequi vos, *namque* vos (*or* vos *enim*) omnes eſtis cæci.
It becomes all you to hear me, for *I have always been ſage.*
Ego monſtrabo vobis duo genera bullarum, *ſi* venietis ad me.
Wilt thou ſhew to me the new kind of pears, if *I come to thee?*
Tota ſchola jam ibit in campos, *ni* (or *niſi*) Magiſtri vetant.
In vain men are exerciſed in learning, unleſs (if not) *the Rules be true.*
Sol ortus eſt, ergo (*igitur*) dies eſt. *The Moon ſhines*, therefore *it's night.*

Quamquam

Quamquam (*quamvis*) tu habes nimias opes, *tamen* es pauperrimus.
Although *the path of life be narrow*, yet *the juſt man walks in it.*
Ego *ita* feci, *ut* pater juſſit. *We have not done* ſo, as *the thing requires.*

§ II. The Uſe of the Subjunctive Mood.

Q. *It was ſaid* N° 583. *and* 654. *that Verbs of the Subjunctive Mood were to be put after other Verbs in a Compounded Sentence, now ſhew me how they are ſo put.*

806. *A.* The Subjunctive Mood is to be uſed in Compounded Sentences.

1. Always after *ut* or *uti* ſignifying that, and *ne* that not.

2. Always after *ut* or *utinam*, ſignifying O that, and then the Subjunct. Mood is called the Optative or Wiſhing Mood.

3. Sometimes after *Si*, *ni*, *niſi*, *cum*, *quamvis*, *&c.* as here you ſee.

807. I. In the firſt Conjugat. Præſ. or Fut. Imperf.

Res poſcit ut	Ego cœnem	The matter requires that	*I ſhould walk*
	Tu jentes		*Thou ſhould'ſt howl*
	Stilla mãnet		*The ſouldier ſhould fight*
	Nos lavemus		*We ſhould cry*
	Vos juretis		*Ye ſhould wail*
	Canes latrent.		*Towers ſhould totter.*

808. In the Præter Imperf. Subj.

Quis fuit hic cum	Ego ructarem	Who were here when	*I was breakfaſting*
	Tu ululares		*Thou waſt ſupping*
	Columbus volaret		*The witneſs was ſwearing*
	Nos erraremus		*We were walking*
	Vos ploraretis		*Ye were wandring*
	Minæ ſonarent.		*Wolves were howling.*

809. In the Præterperf. Subj.

Omnes noverunt ut	Ego pugnavĕrim	All men ſee how that	*I have reignad*
	Tu ructaveris		*Thou haſt plowed*
	Flagrum crepaverit		*The dragon has flown*
	Nos clamaverĭmus		*We have wailed*
	Vos erraveritis		*Ye have gaped*
	Domus flagraverint.		*The gales have breathed.*

810. In the Præter-pluperf. Optative.

O utinam	Ego cœnaviſſem!	O, that	*I had cried out!*
	Tu jentaviſſes!		*Thou hadſt howled!*
	Caſa flagraviſſet!		*The Town had wailed!*
	Nos erravliſſemus!		*We had ſwimmed!*
	Vos migraviſſetis!		*Ye had flown!*
	Roſæ fragraviſſent!		*Men had conſidered!*

811. In

811. In the Future Perfect Subjunctive.

Vos venite huc cum	Ego cœnavero	Go ye hence, when	*I ſhall have walked*
	Tu jentaveris		*Thou ſhalt have ſupped*
	Pater ambulaverit		*The Cat ſhall have howled*
	Nos clamaverimus		*We ſhall have breakfaſted*
	Vos plantaveritis		*Ye ſhall have cryed out*
	Teſtes juraverint.		*The Citizens ſhall have flitted.*

N. B. So the other Conjugations may be gone through.

CHAP. XIX.

The Summ of all ſaid before about putting Words together to make Sentences.

812. *N. B.* I. An Interjection moſtly maketh a ſenſe by its ſelf.
813. II. A Conjunction is onely uſed to joyn two Sentences together.
814. III. The other ſix Parts of Speech are put into Sentences by 13 Rules.

§ *The Sum of the* XIII. *Phraſe-Rules.*

815. I. In every ſimple Sentence there is one Verb Finite, and but one, which agrees with its Nominative Caſe by *R.* II.

816. II. A Noun, Pronoun or Participle if it be a Subſtantive of
1. The Vocative Caſe is onely uſed after O, to call by, by *R.* I.
2. The Nom. *Caſe* is uſed either { 1. before a Verb Finite by *R.* II. 2. or after Verbs of Being, *&c.* by *R.* III.
3. The Accuſative *Caſe* is uſed upon three accounts, { 1. Before Verbs Infinite, by *N°* 704. 2. After Verbs Tranſitives, by *R.* IV. 3. After the firſt 27 Præp. *&c.* by *R.* VI. N° 730, 732.
4. The Ablative onely after the 12 Præp. *&c.* by *R.* 6. N° 731, 732.
5. The Dative is uſed either { 1. After Verbs put Acquiſitively, by *R.* VII. 2. After Adjectives, by *R.* XII.
6. The Genitive is uſed either { 1. After another Subſtantive, by *R.* IX. 2. Or after Adjectives of *ability*, *&c.* by *R.* XIII.

817. III. A Noun, Pronoun or Participle Adjective ever agrees with its Subſtantive in Caſe, Gender and Number, by *R.* X.

818. IV. Adverbs and Præpoſitions are joyned { Either 1. to Verbs, by *R.* V. Or 2. to Adject. or other words by *R.* XI.

819. *N. B.* Infinite Verbs and Part. are both Nouns and Verbs, and ſo
1. Infinite Verbs, Supines and Gerunds being Subſt. are uſed as other Subſt.
2. Other Participles being Adjectives follow the Rules of Adjectives.
3. All theſe conſidered as Verbs have ſuch Caſes as their Verbs have.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

What Words may be left out in a Sentence.

Q. *Is there any thing more yet to be known about Sentences?*

820. *A.* Two things are yet to be known about Sentences.

I. That whatever Words may be as well underſtood when left out, as they would be, if they were mentioned, may be left out.

Q. *Upon what accounts may this be done?*

821. *A.* Words may be left out upon four accounts.

Q. Firſt *when may words be left out?*

822. *A.* I. When a word has been mention'd juſt before, and may be ſuppoſed to be kept in mind, then it is oft left out, as, Cæſar venit, & vidit, & vicit, you need not ſay, Cæſar venit, & Cæſar vidit, & Cæſar vicit.

Ego nec habeo nummos, nec cupio	*Thou art wanton in words, and works*
Nos ſcripſimus, plus quam vos	*Ye have eaten more, than we*
Hæc veſtis eſt patris, *viz.* veſtis	*This book is the maſter's,* ſc. *book*
Cujus eſt hic liber? *R.* meus	*Whoſe houſe is this?* A. *Ours.*

823. Therefore in a Relative Sentence, the Antecedent word is ſeldom repeated, but be ſure you fetch it over in your thought; as,

Ego amo Chriſtum, qui me emit	*I bought the boots, which he there*
Tu habes uxorem, quam non amas	*The wine is bad, which you ſent me*
Vides templum, quod Rex ſtruxit	*We teach boys, which learn nothing*
Quem ſermonem audis, non eſt meus	*What words I ſpake, thoſe I deny.*

Q. *When* ſecondly *may words be left out?*

824. *A.* II. When any word is to be mentioned ſtraight, if it can well be underſtood, it may be left out in the former part; as,

Placent populo, quas facio fabulas			*Drink ye red, or white wine*
Audio & miror tua verba			*I ever did, and ever will love you*
Unus	cecidit	puerorum	*The firſt of the Kings is dead*
Una	ex	puellarum	*The ſecond of the Queens is fled*
Unum	numero	templorum.	*The beſt of the Churches is burnt.*

Q. *When* thirdly *may a Word be left out?*

825. *A.* III. When the thought is expreſſed by ſome other means; as, Quis eſt ille? pointing to a man, you need not ſay, Quis homo eſt ille homo?

Q. *When* fourthly *may words be left out?*

826. *A.* IV. Thoſe words which upon the mentioning of others muſt needs be ſuppoſed to be meant may be left out; as, *When you come to* Paul's, *then turn to the* left, every body knows you mean *Paul's Church*, and the *left hand*, therefore they need not be expreſſed.

See Examples of this in ſeveral Phraſes.

827. In

827. In the I. Phraſe the Interjection may be left out, and the Vocative onely expreſſed; as, Cur tu mentiris Petre. Parce mihi Domine.

828. In the II. Phraſe the Nominative when upon mentioning the Verb it is certainly known, need not be expreſſed; as, to

Amo, amabam, docebo, lego, legam Amas, amabas, ama, docebis, legis, audi Amamus, docemus, legebamus, audimus Amatis, amate, docetote, legetis, audite Aiunt te furere. Dicunt Regem venire Pluit, grandinat, fulminat	no word can be the Nom. C. but	Ego Tu Nos Vos Homines Nubes	and therefore they may be left out.

N. B. *But you cannot ſay* amat, docebat, legunt, audient, &c. *without the* Nom. Caſe *becauſe none can know* what *it is that* loves, teaches, &c. *it may be* Pater amat, *or* mater amat, *or* canis amat, *or* uxor, &c.

829. In the VI. Phraſe, 1. Sometimes the Præpoſition is left out. 2. Sometimes its Caſe. 3. Sometimes both.

§ 1. *The Præpoſition is left out in* 12 *places.*

830. 1. The word that ſignifies { the *Inſtrument* by which / the *Cauſe* for which / the *Manner* after which } any thing is done, it uſually put in the Ablative Caſe without a Præpoſition, as

Solemus tundere metalla tudite	*We dig our Gardens with ſpades*
Findimus radicem quercûs cuneo	*Te ſnuff the lamp with the tongues*
Scindimus aream uberem ligone	*Smiths poliſh arms with a file*
Tergimus labia tenui linteo	*A bald Crown is vailed with a peruke*
Verrimus parietem turpem ſcopis	*Men grave glaſs with a needle*
Pungimus boves pigros ſtimulo	*They puniſh a ſlow boy with the laſh*
Diſcipuli ſontes tacent metu	*Guiltleſs men leap for joy*
Gaudemus rebus tuis proſperis	*Rejoyce not for the death of another*
Sentio me eſſe laſſum ſcribendo	*I ſee that you are tired with playing*
Ordo ſervatur facili labore	*Works are done by ſeaſonable labours*
Omnes homines ſunt pares natura	*A ſpeech is made with much care*
Mors venit veloce pede.	*The hours flie with ſwift feet.*

831. 2. The word of Price, at which a thing is rated, is put in the Ablative Caſe without the Præpoſition, as

Jentamus hodie tribus aſſibus	*We dined yeſterday for one as*
Emi duos libros uno ſemiſſe	*I ſold my book for three half-aſſes*
Olera venduntur vili pretio	*They ſell jewels at an huge price.*

Except theſe Genitives Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, &c.

832. 3. After words ſignifying to be *full* or *empty of any thing*, the Ablat. Caſe is ſet down without the Præpoſition; as,

Hic urceus eſt plenus ſapone	*This pipkin is full of aſhes*
Tuum cerebrum eſt inane virtute	*That barrel was empty of ale.*
Mater mea eſt vidua viro ſuo	*My brother is widowed of his wife.*

So egēre and carēre have an Ablat. without a Præpoſition; as

Sum dives quanquam caream nummis	*You can't read if you want a book*
Homo pauper eget omnibus rebus	*Your pipes need a ſtrong wind.*

833. 4. Fungor, fruor, utor, potior; dignus, indignus, have an Ablat. Caſe without a Præp. as,

Juſtus vir fungitur officio ſuo	*Unjuſt men diſcharge not their duties*
Acer miles fruitur triumpho	*Smart ſouldiers enjoy triumphs*
Segnes fures non potiuntur præda	*A lazy leader gets no ſpoil*
Anus macra utitur baculo ſuo	*Fat old men uſe their ſtaffs*
Manus larga eſt digna laude.	*Bad works are unworthy of fame.*

834. 5. *Ad* is left out before *rus* and *domus*, and Proper Names of Towns; as,

Hodie iturus ſum Londinum	*Many men are going to Rome*
Jubeo, mi fili, ut eas domum	*Go and carry this burthen home*
Jam ibimus rus, ibique venabimur.	*O child, flee thou into the countrey.*

835. II. After Verbs of *motion* the firſt Supine is put, *Ad* left out; as,

Eo amatum	*Came ye hither to ſleep?*
Veni viſum te	*We go to hear ſermons.*
Vadimus venatum.	*I am going to accuſe the ſcholars.*

836. 6. Before the meaſure of *Time* or *ſpace*, *ad* or *per* is oft left out in Latin, and rhꝛouꝛh or foꝛ in Engliſh; as

Toram hiemem ſtertis	*Bees gather hony all the ſummer*
Carolus regnavit triginta annos	*I have been here a whole hour*
Hic liber eſt craſſus tres digitos	*That river is ten foot broad.*

837. 7. *A*, *ab* or *ex* ſignifying *from* a place, coming before *Rus*, *domus*, and the Proper Names of Towns is left out; as,

Unde venis? Venio rure	*The goats are come out of the Countrey*
Pater dudum exivit domo	*When came your ſon from home*
Epiſcopus olim migravit Roma.	*The Queen hath removed from London.*

838. 8. *In* before *rus*, and Proper Names of Towns is left out; as,

Procēres ſolent venari rure	*Hares uſe to lurk in the Countrey*
Omnes artes vigebant Athenis.	*Scipio beat Hannibal at Carthage.*

839. But if the Name of the Town be of the firſt or ſecond Declenſion, and of the Singular Number, it muſt be put in the Genitive, and *in urbe* left out; as,

Quid faciam Romæ, *for* in urbe Romæ. *What will ye do at London?*

N. B. *So* Humi, domi, militiæ, belli, *are uſed in the Genitive*; *as*,

Domi bellique ſimul viximus. *I tarry at home, thou at war.*

840. 9. *In* before words of *Time*, is oft left out; as,

Stellæ

Stellæ lucent noſte, non die	*We ſtudy a-days not a-nights*
Sol cadit veſperi, oritur mane	*Say thy prayers morning and evening*
Nives non cadunt menſe Julio	*Hail hath oft fallen in Auguſt*
Uxor eſt ægra animo & corpore	*An Owl is broad in the breaſt and back.*

§ How to turn a Compounded Sentence into a Simple one by the Ablative Caſe Abſolute.

841. 1o. When we are to expreſs that *a thing is, does,* or *ſuffers,* When, While or After that any *thing is, does,* or *ſuffers,* we may

1. Caſt away the Copies when, while, after.
2. Then turn the Nominative after them into the Ablative Caſe.
3. Turn the Verb into a Participle Adject. to agree with it, leaving out the Præpoſition, and this is called the Ablative Caſe Abſolute.

N. B. *If the Verb be put* Imperfectly *turn it into* ans, ens *or* iens; *as,*

Cum Rex veniret, hoſtes fugerunt	Rege Veniente, hoſtes fugerunt
Dum Magiſter docet, pueri ludunt	Magiſtro docente, pueri ludunt
Cum nos cœnabimus, tibiæ ſonabunt.	Nobis cœnantibus, tibiæ ſonabunt.

N. B. *But if it ſignifie* Perfectly, *change it into the* Participle *in* tus, ſus *or* xus; *as,*

Poſtquam ſol eſſet ortus, ivi venatum	Sole orto, ivi venatum
Cum ædes fuiſſent purgatæ, ancilla dormivit	Ædibus purgatis, anc. &c.
Cum cauſa eſt judicata, latro ſuſpenditur	Torre accenſo quærimus libros.

Imitations.

While the Maſter exhorts, the men dig	*The Maſter exhorting, the men dig*
As the barber clips, the hairs fall	*When a gale blows, the boughs move*
The fiſh being caught, the net is taken up	*The Maſter raging, the boys tremble*
When ſtripes ſound, hearts are in pain	*After London was built, the bridge was made*
After the doors are ſhut, ye can't enter	*The wife ſeen, the husband fled.*

842. 11. Words of the *Comparative* Degree ſignifying more ſo than another thing, may have after it the Name of *that thing* in the Ablative without the Præp. as,

Hic vir eſt mollior muliere, *i. e.* præ	*That woman is ſtouter than a man*
Pater meus eſt hilarior matre	*My ſiſter is ſadder than my brother*
Salix ſolet eſſe lentior quercu	*Oaks are wont to be liſtier than willows*
Tu videris ſurdior omnibus ſaxis.	*I ſeem briſker than a live flame.*

843. 12. *After Verbs of* Warning, Accuſing, Condemning *and* Acquitting, *the Præpoſition* De *is oft left out; as,*

Ego condemnabo te eodem crimine. *You are accuſed of many crimes.*

844. § II. Sometimes the Caſe is left out; as,

Pater iam exivit, *viz.* domo	*Drive you out the dog*, viz. *out of doors*
I præ, ſequar, *viz.* præ me	*I will go before*, viz. *you*
Pone venit conjux, *viz.* me.	*Come you behind*, viz. *me.*

845. § III. Sometimes both the Præp. and its Caſe are left out.

So I. After Verbs of *warning*, *accuſing*, *condemning* and *acquitting De Crimine* may be left out; becauſe none are *accuſed* but *of a crime*; as,

Accuſo te furti, *i. e.* de crimine furti	*You are accuſed of adultery*
Condemnamus vos doli mali.	*You condemn us of evil fraud.*

846. So II. All words put *Partitively*, *i. e.* denoting *Part out of many* have a Genit. after them, *ex numero* being underſtood; as, *Inſtead of* Tu es unus ex numero Diſcipulorum, Tu es unus Diſcipulorum.

Magiſter cecidit ſeptem puerorum	*I ſaw three of the Magiſtrates*
David Rex fuit primus poetarum	*None of the girls can reade*
Pauci virorum ſunt boni	*Ten of the Apoſtles were ſlain*
Utrum horum mavis accipe	*Gather whether of the apples you will*
Neutra caprarum poteſt vendi	*Neither of the briſtles is ſtrong*
Alter fratrum cecidit in bello.	*The other of the ſiſters is faireſt.*

847. In the VII. Phr. the Dative when known may be left out; as,

Da panem, *viz.* mihi	*Reach the cup*, i. e. *to me.*

848. In the VIII. Phr. the firſt Subſtantive may be left out, *viz.* when upon hearing the ſecond, it is well enough underſtood; as,

Venimus ad Pauli, *viz.* templum.	*When you come to St. Peter's, ſtop.*

849. In the IX. One of the Subſtantives is left out, *viz.* when, *&c.* as,

Nunquam vidi Regem, *viz.* Jacobum.	*My father is come to Town*, i. e. *London.*

850. In X. The Adjective omitted when eaſily underſtood; as,

Monſtra te virum, *viz.* fortem.	*She ſhews her ſelf a woman.* i. e. *weak.*

Eſpecially the Poſſeſſives *meus*, *tuus*, *ſuus*, *noſter*, *veſter* are ſo left out; as,

Vidiſtine Patrem hodie? *viz.* tuum	*Where is your ſiſter?*
Ignis urit crura, *viz.* mea	*Take ye up your books*
Tu ita te geris erga matrem?	*How carry ye your ſelves ill to your Mr?*

851. The Subſtantive is moſt frequently omitted.

1. *Homo* is oft left out; as

Quis me vocat?	*Whom do ye call?*
Juvenis fiet ſenex	*The young deſire to be old*
Amicus juvabit amicum	*The friendly love the friendly*
Pauperes cupiunt videri divites	*The rich deſpiſe the poor*
Dominus novit viam piorum	*To day I heard one preaching*
Rex & Regina ſunt beati, *viz.* homines.	*The man and his wife are righteous.*

852. 2. *Menſis* is left out in the twelve names of Months; as,

Rex

Rex mortuus eſt ſexto die Februarii — *We began the fifth of October*
Hic eſt primus dies Januarii. — *And ended the eighth of December.*

853. 3. *Manus* is oft underſtood as *Hand* in Engliſh; as,
Chriſtus ſedet ad dextram Patris — *Turn you to the right*
Cur prehendis me ſiniſtra. — *I will go to the left.*

854. 4. *Negotium* and *Officium* in Latin, and Thing or Act in Engliſh are frequently left out when they may be underſtood; as,
Lupus eſt triſte ſtabulis — *To write a ſhort letter is eaſie*
Meminiri non eſt meum — *To number the ſands of the ſea is hard*
Omnia ſunt miſera in bello — *It's rare to ſee a wiſe woman*
Recte agere intereſt veſtra — *It concerns you to be good.*
i. e. eſt inter veſtra negotia — i. e. *It is among your concerns*
Puerorum eſt (officium) parere Magiſtris. — *It's your duty to obey Kings.*

§. Words left out in a Compound Sentence.

Q. *What words may be left out in a Compounded Sentence?*

855. *A.* In a Compounded Sentence,
1. Sometimes the firſt Sentence is left out,
2. Sometimes the Cople is left out,
3. Sometimes both the firſt Sentence and the Cople;

} that is when they are as well underſtood.

856. Sometimes the firſt ſentence is omitted; as,
Utinam cecidiſſes in bello: *ſupply* O.
Ut Satanas trudatur in orcum.
Ut vales? *i.e.* quæro *or* rogo.

857. 2. Sometimes the Cople is omitted; as,
Velim, cures ſalutem tuam, *i.e.* velim ut, &c.
Rogo, ſcribas ad me de iſta re.

858. 3. Sometimes both the firſt Sent. and the Cople are left out; as,
Eas per me in malam crucem, *i.e.* licet ut eas, &c.
Scribas ad me de rebus omnibus, *i.e.* fac ut ſcribas, &c.

N. B. *But in this you muſt doe nothing without the authority of the beſt ſpeakers.*

§. The Cople That left out in Engliſh.

859. *N. B* The Cople That is oft left out in Engliſh but not in Latin; as,
I deſire (that) *you would ſup with me.* — Rogo ut cœnes mecum.
I think I ſaw him, i. e. *that I*, &c. — Puto me vidiſſe illum.
We came after the rain was over, i. e. *after that, not* poſt *but* poſtquam.
Te were here before we came, i. e. *before that, not* ante *but* antequam.

860. Eſpecially when it is Relative *that*, *which*, *who*, *whom*, may be in Engliſh omitted but not in Latin; as,

This

This is the horſe I ſold to you	Hic eſt equus *quem* tibi vendidi
Give me the book you bought	Da mihi librum *quem* emiſti
Is this the reward ye ſpoke of, i. e. *of which.*	Hoccine eſt præmium de quo locuti eſtis.

CHAP. XXI.

The Words in a Sentence may be tranſplaced.

Q. *Which is the ſecond thing to be obſerved about Sentences?*

861. *A.* II. The Latins uſe not to place the words of a Sentence always in their *natural order* as they lie in ſenſe, but put them into ſuch order as will ſound ſweeteſt to the ear, but ſo that the ſenſe be not thereby darkened.

Q. *How may the Words of a Sentence be thus tranſpoſed?*

862. *A.* I. A Sentence of *two* words may be put *two* ways; as,

Ego vivo *or* Vivo ego. Dominus dicit *or* Dicit Dominus.

863. II. If there be *three* words in a Sent. it may be put *ſix* ways; as,

Vivimus vitam brevem Vitam vivimus brevem Brevem vitam vivimus
Vivimus brevem vitam Vitam brevem vivimus Brevem vivimus vitam.
So turn Ars eſt longa. Vita eſt brevis. Mœſta mors venit, &c.

864. III. A Sentence of IV Words may be put 24 ways; as in this, you may begin ſix times with *vive.* And ſix times with *memor.*

Vive memor mortis venientis	Memor vive mortis venientis
Vive memor venientis mortis	Memor vive venientis mortis
Vive mortis memor venientis	Memor mortis venientis vive
Vive mortis venientis memor	Memor mortis vive venientis
Vive venientis mortis memor	Memor venientis mortis vive
Vive venientis memor mortis.	Memor venientis vive mortis.

And ſix times with *mortis.* And ſix times with *venientis.*

Mortis vive venientis memor	Venientis mortis vive memor
Mortis vive memor venientis	Venientis mortis memor vive
Mortis venientis vive memor	Venientis vive mortis memor
Mortis venientis memor vive	Venientis vive memor mortis
Mortis memor vive venientis	Venientis memor mortis vive
Mortis memor venientis vive.	Venientis memor vive mortis.

So turn Animalia viva debent mori. Somnus premit vigiles oculos, &c.

865. IV. A Sent. of five words may be put 120 ways; as in this you may begin 24 times with Chriſtus, and 24 times with every other word.

Chriſtus emit homines ſanguine ſuo	Chriſtus emit ſanguine homines ſuo
Chriſtus emit homines ſuo ſanguine	Chriſtus emit ſanguine ſuo homines

Chriſtus

Chriſtus emit ſuo homines ſanguinè	Chriſtus ſanguine homines emit ſuo
Chriſtus emit ſuo ſanguine homines	Chriſtus ſanguine homines ſuo emit
Chriſtus homines emit ſuo ſanguine	Chriſtus ſanguine emit ſuo homines
Chriſtus homines emit ſanguine ſuo	Chriſtus ſanguine emit homines ſuo
Chriſtus homines ſuo emit ſanguine	Chriſtus ſuo ſanguine emit homines
Chriſtus homines ſuo ſanguine emit	Chriſtus ſuo ſanguine homines emit
Chriſtus homines ſanguine emit ſuo	Chriſtus ſuo emit homines ſanguine
Chriſtus homines ſanguine ſuo emit	Chriſtus ſuo emit ſanguine homines
Chriſtus ſanguine ſuo homines emit	Chriſtus ſuo homines ſanguine emit
Chriſtus ſanguine ſuo emit homines	Chriſtus ſuo homines emit ſanguine.

So turn Cives cinxerunt murum gemino vallo.

866. V. A Sentence of Six words may be changed 720 ways, beginning 24 times with each of the Six words; as,
Pueri ſolent urgere parentes frequentibus epiſtolis, &c.

Q. *May we then miſplace all words in every Sentence as we pleaſe?*

867. *A.* No, not always, but you muſt in this as in all other things follow the uſe of the beſt ſpeakers, of which you ſhall have directions in the next Book.

N. B. *Some words in Engliſh are tranſplaced which you muſt ſet right.*

868. The Præpoſition is ſometimes ſet the laſt word in the Sentence; as, *My loſs of time I blame you for*, i. e. *I blame you for the loſs of my time.*

Eſpecially in Interrogative and Relative ſentences; as,
What ſpake you that for? i. e. *For what ſpake you that?*
Whom do you ſpeak againſt? What place came you from?
This is the man that I ſpoke to you of, i. e. *of whom I ſpoke.*
The light I ſee by is not mine own, i. e. *by which I ſee.*
The horſe you write to me about is ſold, i. e. *about which*, &c.

869. Oft we put the Nominat. after the Verb, and before it ſet *There*, for which there is no Latin word; as,
There was a man, i. e. *A man was*; Fuit homo.
There came a boy to me; Venit ad me puer quidam.

870. If the Nominative Caſe to the Verb be a Verb Infinite, or a Sentence, we uſually ſet it after the Verb Finite, and put it before it; as,
It is an evil thing to lie, i. e. *to lie is an evil thing*; malum eſt mentiri.
It is the cuſtome of boys to ſlight their Maſters; Puerorum mos eſt ſpernere, &c.

Satis eſt ſi non nimis.

FINIS.

The faults escaped	*Amended.*
P. 4. l. 2. Sycion *r.*	Sicyon.
item Syſhion *r.*	Siſhyon.
p. 15. l. 5. nātis *r.*	nătis.
p. 18. l. 8. *after* puniſhment *add*	*Pardon* Venia.
p. 19. l. 10. lēbes *r.*	lĕbes.
p. 22. l. 16. fīdes *r.*	fĭdes.
p. 24. l. 24. *after* guard *add*	*An Enemy* Hoſtis.
p. 32. *after* Thou *add*	*Of ones ſelf* Sui.
ibid. *after* iſte *add*	*This* Hic.
ibid. *after* none *add*	*Another* Alius.
p. 39. l. 10. *after* to deny *add*	*To lie* Mentiri.
ibid. l. 12. *after* to give out *add*	*To ſcatter* Spargĕre.
p. 40. l. 33. *after* puniſh *add*	*To ſpare* Parcĕre.
p. 41. l. 13. *for* to knit *r.*	*To ſpin.*
and add	*To paint* Pingĕre.
p. 52. l. 22. *for* quamdīu *r.*	quamdĭu.
p. 53. l. 19. *for* tēnus *r.*	tĕnus.
p. 69. l. 32. *add*	*and* mane *in the Abl. too.*